

Update Information 2007 Update Number 2

This package updates the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, 5th edition, which was originally published in 1996 and has been updated semiannually since 1997. All new instruction sheets and replacement pages in 2007 Update Number 2 are dated August 2007. The table that follows lists the pages included in this package and summarizes the nature of the updates. Users who wish to maintain a permanent record of the history of the additions and changes listed here should file this table behind the **Update Information** tab in Volume 4 of the manual.

With this update, the manual is current through the end of August 2007. 2008 Update Number 1 is scheduled to be published in Spring 2008.

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 202	2	Text added to sec. 1	Replace
H 250	8	"Scherzos" added to sec. 2.a.(2)	Replace
H 365	2	Text added to sec. 1	Replace
H 370	3	Text added to sec. 1.a	Replace
H 405	10-14	Footnote added to "Artists' groups"	Replace
H 690	7-8	Page formatting error corrected	Replace
H 713	1	Text and example added in sec. 2	Replace
H 800	6-7	Text added to sec. 7 and sec. 8	Replace
H 835	1	New example given in Background statement	Replace
H 980	1-4	Text added to sec. 2; geographic area code for Palestine updated in sec. 5	Replace
H 1095	15-36	List updated	Replace
H 1103	1	Text added to "TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED"	Replace
H 1103	7	List updated	Replace
H 1103	11	List updated	Replace
H 1110	14	List updated	Replace
H 1110	17	List updated	Replace

Update Information 2007 Update Number 2

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1110	24	List updated	Replace
H 1140	1-4	Text added to "TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED"; list updated	Replace
H 1147	3-10	List updated	Replace
H 1156	3-8	List updated	Replace
H 1158	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1164	3-5	List updated	Replace
H 1180	3-10	List updated	Replace
H 1250	11	Example updated in sec. 2.c	Replace
H 1285	1-6	Text added to sec. 1; instruction sheet reformatted	Replace
H 1300	3	Example updated in sec. 3	Replace
H 1330	2	Text revised in sec. 1.a	Replace
H 1334	1	Text added to Background statement	Replace
H 1435	5	Example updated in sec. 2	Replace
H 1592	6	Example updated in sec. 5.a	Replace
H 1610	1-4	Text revised in sec. 1.b; example added in sec. 2.a; p. 3 reformatted	Replace
H 1642	1	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 1647	1	Text added to sec. 1	Replace
H 1678	2	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 1790	4-5	Example updated in sec. 6.d; text updated in sec. 3.a	Replace
H 1855	4	Text revised in sec. 1.c	Replace
H 1855	8	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 1913	1-5	New instruction sheet	Add

**Update Information
2007 Update Number 2**

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1917.5	35	Example updated in sec. 10.a	Replace
H 1928	2	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 1945	1	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 2075	3	Example updated in sec. 1	Replace
H 2080	3	Example updated in sec. 4	Replace
H 2160	1	Sec. 3 added	Replace
H 2230	2-3	Sec. 4 rewritten; new sec. 5 added; previous sec. 5-6 renumbered as sec. 6-7	Replace
Index	15-96	Text updated	Replace

Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals H 202

BACKGROUND: *Proposed subject headings and their associated "used for" references should reflect both the terminology used in current literature on the topic in question, and the system of language, construction, and style used in **Library of Congress Subject Headings**. The purpose of doing authority research and listing the sources consulted in the 670 (Sources found) and 675 (Sources not found) fields of the subject authority record is either to demonstrate the form(s) in which the term being proposed as a heading has been found in existing literature, or to document the fact that no citation to the term can be found in any likely sources except the work being cataloged. The information recorded in the authority record serves as a record of how the cataloger decided on the terminology selected for the heading and UF references. In addition, definitions of terms that are not readily available elsewhere, information on the intended scope and usage of the proposed heading, its relationship to, and distinction from, similar existing headings, and any peculiarities or other pertinent information about the heading are recorded here. This information is used to guide the proposal through the editorial approval process. The online subject authority record serves as a permanent record for future reference and consultation.*

There are three categories of authority information to be recorded in the 670, 675, and 952 (Cataloger's permanent note) fields of the authority record: (1) Citation of LC pattern, (2) Citation of sources consulted, and (3) Other information pertinent to the choice of terminology or the meaning of the heading. All subject heading proposals must include one or more of these categories of information.

1. Citation of LC pattern. Cite a relevant and analogous existing LC heading as the pattern in a 952 field for any of the following types of new subject heading proposals:

- Proposal to add a new qualifier to a heading already analogously qualified.

For example, cite a heading such as **Art, French** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Art, German**.

*Note: When establishing headings of this type, a pattern should be cited to demonstrate that the basic heading has been analogously qualified before. In the case of relatively unusual adjectives, another pattern should be cited to demonstrate that the form being used as the qualifier has been used in the subject authority file before. For example, for a proposal to establish the heading **Propaganda, Zimbabwean**, cite a heading such as **Propaganda, West German** to demonstrate that the heading **Propaganda** has been qualified by nationalities and a heading such as **Poets, Zimbabwean** to demonstrate that the adjective **Zimbabwean** has been used before.*

H 202 Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals

1. Citation of LC pattern. (Continued)

- Proposal to establish a non-free-floating subdivision under a heading for which an analogous pattern of usage exists.

For example, cite a heading such as **Rangelands–Monitoring** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Coral reefs and islands–Monitoring**.

- Proposal to establish a heading always constructed according to a standard pattern, such as "and" headings (cf. H 310), "in" headings, **Cookery ([topic])**, **Advertising–[topic]**, etc.
- Proposal to establish a heading using a parenthetical qualifier that has been used after other headings (cf. H 357).

For example, cite a heading such as **Cheesecake (Cookery)** as the pattern for a proposal to establish a heading such as **Brownies (Cookery)**.

Note: The citation of a pattern in this situation serves only to justify the choice of the qualifier. The proposal must be supported by additional authority work to justify the choice of terminology and form of the substantive portion of the heading.

- Proposal to establish a heading for topical use when the same heading already exists as a genre/form heading.

For example, cite the genre/form heading **Buddy films** [tag 155] as the pattern for a proposal to establish the analogous topical heading **Buddy films** [tag 150].

- Proposal to establish a heading for genre/form use when the same heading already exists as a topical heading

For example, cite the topical heading **Monster films** [tag 150] as the pattern for a proposal to establish the analogous genre/form heading **Monster films** [tag 155].

Music Heading Authority Records H 250

2. Pattern headings. No authority records are required for headings that conform to the patterns described below.

a. Pattern: Medium of performance. Medium of performance is the vocal, instrumental, or other performers for which individual musical works are written. Listed below are the five categories of headings to which terms for medium of performance can be added as needed to the term that appears as the heading's initial element. H 1917.5 describes the categories and their components in detail, and also includes instructions on creating authority records for general see also references.

Note: The subject authority file contains a large number of headings for forms, types, and genres of music that consist of or include medium of performance. With the exceptions indicated in sec. 1 above, in general, these types of headings are no longer established because: (1) the patterns for the order of musical instruments in headings have existed for some time; (2) cross references giving the terms for medium of performance in alternative order are no longer made; and (3) the headings already in the subject authority file amply illustrate the patterns. Authority records are now created only to provide examples of the use of particular mediums of performance, such as those that are new.

The categories of headings to which the medium of performance pattern applies are listed below.

(1) Headings that contain a word for the number of performers. Examples:

```
150 ## $a Trios, [Quartets, Quintets, etc.]
150 ## $a Brass trios, [quartets, quintets, etc.]
150 ## $a String trios, [quartets, quintets, etc.]
150 ## $a Wind trios, [quartets, quintets, etc.]
150 ## $a Woodwind trios, [quartets, quintets, etc.]

150 ## $a Sacred vocal duets, [trios, quartets, etc.]
150 ## $a Vocal duets, [trios, quartets, etc.]
```

H 250 Music Heading Authority Records

2. Pattern headings.

a. Pattern: Medium of performance. (Continued)

(2) The following headings for form, genre, type, etc., of music:

150 ## \$a Canons, fugues, etc.
150 ## \$a Chaconnes
150 ## \$a Chorale preludes
150 ## \$a Concertos
150 ## \$a Marches
150 ## \$a Monologues with music
150 ## \$a Overtures
150 ## \$a Passacaglias
150 ## \$a Potpourris
150 ## \$a Rondos
150 ## \$a Sacred monologues with music
150 ## \$a Scherzos
150 ## \$a Sonatas
150 ## \$a Suites
150 ## \$a Symphonic poems
150 ## \$a Symphonies
150 ## \$a Trio sonatas
150 ## \$a Variations

(3) The following headings for vocal music:

150 ## \$a Choruses
150 ## \$a Choruses, Sacred
150 ## \$a Choruses, Secular
150 ## \$a Sacred songs
150 ## \$a Songs
150 ## \$a Vocalises

(4) **Accompanying ensemble.** An accompanying ensemble may be added to headings for solo instrument(s) and solo vocal music, as long as the ensemble has itself been established. The pattern applies to the connecting word **with** and the terms for the accompaniment that follow it. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Piano music
150 ## \$a Chamber orchestra music
650 #0 \$a Piano with chamber orchestra.

150 ## \$a Violin and piano music
150 ## \$a String orchestra music
650 #0 \$a Violin and piano with string orchestra.

Library of Congress Classification Numbers H 365 In Subject Authority Records

BACKGROUND: *If one or more class numbers in the LC Classification system correspond precisely with the idea represented by a subject heading, the number or numbers are put in 053 fields in the subject authority record, with qualifying terms if necessary and appropriate. This instruction sheet provides principles and guidelines on when and when not to add LC class numbers to subject authority records. For procedures on how to add class numbers to newly proposed headings, see H 200, sec. 4. For procedures on how to add or change class numbers in existing subject authority records, see H 196.*

1. When to assign and when not to assign a number to a heading. Assign a class number to a heading if:

- the caption for the number is identical or nearly identical in scope, meaning, and language to the subject heading, or
- the topic is explicitly mentioned in an "Including" note under the caption for the number, or
- the topic belongs to a category for which it is standard LC classification policy to classify works at a level that is broader than the subject headings assigned. For example, the class number QL444.C74, (Harpacticoida) may be added to the subject heading **Harpacticidae** (a family of Harpacticoida), because works on species, genera, and families are all classed by order in QL444 rather than being individually established. Similarly, the class numbers M 288-M289 (Duets for two wind instruments) may be added to the subject heading **Bassoon and flute music**, because individual numbers are not established in subclass M for every combination of specific instruments.

H 365 Library of Congress Classification Numbers In Subject Authority Records

1. *When to assign and when not to assign a number to a heading.* (Continued)

Do not assign:

- a number representing a concept broader than, and encompassing, a specific heading. For example, **HV874.8-HV875.7**, the numbers for **Adoption** should not be assigned to the heading **Open adoption**, a topic for which a specific number has not yet been established.
- a number for a general topic to a heading or heading-subdivision combination for a specific aspect of the topic, even if the specific aspect classes in the general number. For example, **LB1028.35**, the number for **Instructional systems** should not be assigned to the heading **Instructional systems–Design**, even though works on the topic may have been classed in the general number. **LB1028.35** should be assigned only to its corresponding general heading, **Instructional systems**.
- a class number with a qualifier for a specific aspect of a topic to a general heading, when the specific aspect is actually expressed by a free-floating topical subdivision under the general heading. For example, the number **RM666.R37 (Therapeutics)** should not be assigned to the heading **Recombinant molecules** because the number actually corresponds to **Recombinant molecules–Therapeutic use**.

Exceptions: For musical instrument headings, class numbers for history and/or for instruction and study may be added to the authority records for the instruments themselves. For literature headings, class numbers for collections and/or for history and criticism may be added to the authority records for the base headings. For headings that designate groups of people, class numbers for biography may be added to the authority records for the headings.

- a class number in which a particular item (or the only item) on a topic has been classed but whose caption does not directly correspond to the subject heading. For example, **RA785** with the caption **Relaxation. Rest. Stress management** should not be assigned to the heading **Worry beads**, a topic for which a specific number has not been established.
- a *General special* number to any subject heading, even if the topic is specified in an including note.
- a number that is not actually included in the classification schedules but needs to be built by applying a table to a classification number or span.

Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms H 370

1. Hierarchical references.

a. General rule. When establishing a new heading, follow the principle described above in creating its reference structure, making appropriate BT reference(s) when establishing a new heading. Also follow the guidelines for making references for particular types of headings that are given in specific instruction sheets on those topics, for example, H 690, sec. 10.b and 10.c, for geographic names; H 1332, sec. 4.b., for biological names. The automated system generates the "reciprocal" NT references using the notation NT in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. *Examples:*

Hot dog rolls	← narrower heading
BT Bread	← broader heading
Bread	← narrower heading
BT Baked products	← broader heading

Except in the situations described below, make at least one BT when establishing a new heading. Make this BT even if both headings begin with the same word. *Example:*

Roads, Gravel
BT Roads

(1) "*Orphan*" headings. "Orphan" headings, that is, headings having no BT, are generally prohibited in the subject authority file. There are, however, a limited number of situations in which "orphan" headings are permitted, including the following:

- Headings that are "top terms," that is, the broadest topic in a given hierarchy, for example, **Science**.
- Headings for geographic regions.
- Headings for family names.

H 370 Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms

1. Hierarchical references.

a. General rule.

(1) "Orphan" headings. (Continued)

- Inverted headings qualified by names of languages, nationalities, ethnic groups, or terms that designate time periods, when the only appropriate BTs are the identical heading without the qualifier, the identical heading with a broader linguistic, national, or ethnic qualifier, or a broader heading with the identical qualifier. For example, **Painting, French** does not have the BT **Painting; Painting, European**; or **Art, French**; and **Aesthetics, Ancient** does not have the BT **Aesthetics**.

Note however that references are routinely made, especially for belles lettres headings of this type, from broader terms with the qualifier in the initial position, for example, **Short stories, German** has the BT **German fiction**.

(2) "*Subdivision-to-subdivision*" references. In general, do not make a reference from one heading with a subdivision to a narrower heading with the same subdivision. Instead, make the reference link at the level of the unsubdivided headings. *Example:*

Lamas
BT Priests, Buddhist

[*not* Lamas–Lineage
BT Priests, Buddhist–Lineage]

(3) *General see also* references. Do not make references between individual headings in situations where a general see also reference is appropriate and has been, or should be, made (see H 371).

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
School districts	110
Schools	110
Service stations	110
Ships	110
Shipyards	110
Shows (Exhibitions)	111
Software, Computer	130 ⁶
Sound recording labels	110
Space vehicles	110
Sporting events	111
Stock exchanges	110
Stores, Retail	110
Studies (Research projects)	110
Synagogues	110
Television programs	130
Temples (in use; excludes temples in ruins)	110
Theater companies	110
Tournaments	111
Tribes (as legal entities only; U.S. only)	151
Truck stops	110
Undertakers	110
Universities	110
Utility districts	151
Water districts	151
Web sites	130
Works of art, Individual	100, 110, 130
Zoological gardens	110

⁶Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS: Named entities always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name authority file or the subject authority file.

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Amusement parks	151
Apartment houses	110
Aqueducts	151
Arches	150
Arenas	110
Armories	110
Artists' groups ⁷	150
Asian conglomerate corporations	110
Astronomical features (asteroids, comets, galaxies, planets, etc.)	151
Auditoriums	110
Awards	150
Bathhouses	110
Baths, Ancient	110
Bridges	151
Building details	150
Buildings, Private	110
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies	110
Bus terminals	110
Camps	151
Canals	151
Capitols	110
Castles	110
Celestial bodies	151
Cities, Extinct (Pre-1500)	151
City halls	110

⁷Headings in this category include artists' groups that are often informally organized, may not be self-named, and do not play a role in collectively promoting and marketing their work. Headings for artists' groups that are self-identified by a particular name and function as a business firm in creating, publishing, promoting, and marketing their works are established as corporate entities according to descriptive cataloging conventions.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Civic centers	110
Clans	100
Club houses	110
Coliseums	110
Collections, Public or Private	110
Collective farms	151
Community centers	110
Computer languages	150
Computer networks	150
Computer systems	150
Convention centers	110
Courthouses	110
Customhouses	110
Details, Building	150
Docks	151
Doors	150
Dwellings	110
Estates	151
Events ⁸	150
Exhibition buildings	110
Fairgrounds	151
Families	100
Farms	151
Feasts	150
Ferry buildings	110
Fire stations	110
Forests (Geographic entities) ⁹	151
Fortresses (Structures)	151

⁸Events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal name but are commonly referred to by generic terms only. See H 1592 for a list of types of events to be established in the subject authority file.

⁹Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for forests as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term (**Agency**).

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Fountains	150
Gangs	150
Gardens	151
Gates	150
Golf courses	151
Grain elevators	110
Gymnasiums	110
Hazardous waste sites	151
Highways	151
Historic sites (including historic districts not in cities)	151
Immigration stations	110
Islands, Nonjurisdictional	151
Land grants	151
Lighthouses	110
Locks (Hydraulic engineering)	151
Manors	110
Mansions	110
Market buildings	110
Military installations (before 1900 <i>and</i> inactive)	151
Mine buildings	110
Mines	151
Mints	110
Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.)	150
Music halls	110
Office buildings	110
Official residences	110
Palaces	110
Parks (Geographic entities) ¹⁰	151

¹⁰Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for parks as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term (**Agency**).

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Pavilions	110
Pipelines	151
Playgrounds	151
Plazas (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	151
Police stations	110
Pools, Public	110
Ports (Physical facilities)	151
Post offices	110
Posthouses	110
Power plants	110
Presidential mansions	110
Public comfort stations	110
Racetracks	110
Railway stations	110
Ranches	151
Recreation areas	151
Refugee camps	151
Reservations, Indian	151
Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.)	151
Resorts	110
Roads	151
Rooms	150
Sanitary landfills	151
Satellites (i.e., moons)	151
Schools of artists	150
Shopping centers	110
Shrines (<i>not</i> churches)	150
Spas	110
Sports arenas	110
Sports facilities	110
Stadiums	110
Stagecoach stations	110
Streets	151

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Structures (Non-geographic, for example, towers)	150
Temples (In ruins)	110
Terminal buildings	110
Theater buildings	110
Theme parks	151
Tombs	150
Towers	150
Trails	151
Tribes (Ethnic groups)	150
Tunnels	151
Villas	110
Walls	150
Waterways	151
Wells	151

Formulating Geographic Headings H 690

8. Conflicts. Conflicts involving geographic names may be resolved by designating the category of the feature in the parenthetical qualifier following a colon (cf. H 810) or by incorporating the generic term for the feature into the name itself. Prefer the latter method if it will resolve the conflict without causing redundancy. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Madura Island (Indonesia)
[not 151 ## $a Madura (Indonesia : Island) ]
```

Exception: For named regions that conflict with names of cities, include the term **Region** in the qualifier (cf. H 760, sec. 1.e.(2)).

9. Capitalization. When formulating names or references, use the appropriate current rules of capitalization for the language in question (see Appendix B of this manual and Appendix A of AACR2).

For English forms of place names, capitalize all nouns and adjectives that are essential parts of the name. For example, in the heading **Tatar Strait (Russia)**, the word **Strait** is capitalized since the heading is in English. However, in the UF reference from the vernacular form, **Tatarskiĭ proliv (Russia)**, the word **proliv** is lowercased in accordance with Russian capitalization rules.

10. References.

a. UF references. Add 451 fields with alternative forms, including:

- alternative name forms supplied by BGN or found in other authorities, and their LC romanized equivalents if different from the forms supplied or found.
- the straight form of the name if the heading is established in inverted form.
- the name in the vernacular, including variant forms, if the name is translated into English or a conventional English form is adopted. In this reference, a generic term may appear in the initial position.
- other pertinent foreign language forms, for example, forms in other official languages of the country where the feature is located; the form in the language of countries that previously controlled the feature. Do not add 451 fields with foreign language forms used in a work being cataloged if they are not pertinent to the feature.

H 690 Formulating Geographic Headings

10. References.

a. UF references. Add 451 fields with alternative forms, including: (*Continued*)

- the English form of the name, if meaningful, if the selected name is left in the vernacular.
- abbreviated forms, if the name commonly occurs with an abbreviated term in the initial position.
- alternative forms after the decision has been reached to include or delete the initial article.
- the BGN romanized form if it differs from the LC romanized form and has been supplied as a variant by BGN.

b. Broader terms. Add up to three 550 (broader term) fields containing the generic heading for the type of feature, structure, etc., subdivided by country, etc. For features in more than three countries or first order political divisions of the United States, Canada, and Great Britain, use an appropriate broader geographic name as the subdivision.

References are made for some types of entities, such as parks, archaeological sites, early cities, etc., according to pattern provisions. These patterns are described in individual instruction sheets in this manual.

c. Named groups as broader terms. Add a 551 field containing the named group to which an individual feature belongs, if appropriate and if the heading already exists, for example, an individual peak in a mountain range or an individual lake in a group of lakes, such as **Great Lakes (North America)** or **Finger Lakes (N.Y.)**. Do not establish headings for larger groups only to make the reference.

Make this reference from the smallest applicable named group. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Black Mountains (N.C.)
551 ## $w g $a Blue Ridge Mountains
[not 551 ## $w g $a Appalachian Mountains]
```

Do not add a 551 field containing the name of a region in which a feature is located.

First Order Political Divisions of Countries H 713

BACKGROUND: *The first order political divisions of countries are called departments, provinces, republics, states, etc. For certain countries, topical headings have been established to refer to these divisions collectively, for example, **Canadian provinces** and **U.S. states**. These are used with appropriate subdivisions to bring out certain topics as they occur in the various first order divisions of the country in question. For topics that are expressed by using headings of the type [topic]–[place], the following free-floating subdivisions are used to designate collectively the first order divisions of countries:*

- Autonomous communities
- Autonomous regions
- Cantons
- Departments
- Provinces
- Regions
- Republics
- States
- Union territories
- Voivodeships

This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning headings to works about topics in relation to the first order political divisions of a country.

1. Individual first order political divisions. To works on a topic as it occurs in an individual first order political division, assign headings of the type [topic]–[place]. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Agricultural laws and legislation $z Manitoba.  
650 #0 $a Budget $z California.  
650 #0 $a Economic indicators $z France $z Gard.
```

2. Topical headings that designate the first order divisions of a country. Certain topics are normally expressed as subdivisions under the name of a place. For a comparative work that discusses a topic of this type as it occurs in each of the first order political divisions of a country, assign a heading of the type **Canadian provinces**, **U.S. states**, or **Roman provinces**, subdivided by the appropriate topical subdivision. Establish new headings of this type as they are needed in current cataloging. Topical subdivisions are not free-floating under these headings; they must be established as needed. However, free-floating form subdivisions may be used under these headings without establishing them. Tag these headings **650**, not **651**. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Canadian provinces $x Economic conditions.  
650 #0 $a U.S. states $x Social policy.  
650 #0 $a Roman provinces $x Religious life and customs.
```

H 713 First Order Political Divisions of Countries

3. First order political divisions treated collectively. Most topics are brought out by using topical headings divisible by names of places. For a comparative work that discusses a topic of this type as it occurs in each of the first order political divisions of a country, assign a heading of the type [*topic*]-[*country*], subdivided by the appropriate type of first order political division. Code these free-floating subdivisions that designate a type of first order division **x**, not **z**.

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Budget $z Colombia $x Departments.
650 #0 $a Cabinet system $z Soviet Union $x Republics.
650 #0 $a Cooperative societies $x Law and legislation $z Canada
    $x Provinces.
650 #0 $a Finance, Public $z Spain $x Autonomous communities.
650 #0 $a Land use $z India $x Union territories.
650 #0 $a Law $z Italy $x Regions.
650 #0 $a Sales tax $z United States $x States.
650 #0 $a Transportation $x Law and legislation $z Switzerland
    $x Cantons.
650 #0 $a Minorities $z China $x Autonomous regions $x Economic
    conditions.
```

In cases where geographic subdivision is interposed between a topical heading and a topical subdivision, place the subdivision representing the first order political division immediately after the country rather than at the end of the heading. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Judges $z United States $x States $x Discipline.
[not 650 #0 $a Judges $z United States $x Discipline $x States.]
```

Do not use these subdivisions after names of countries that appear in the initial position in the heading (the \$a subfield). For example, do not construct a heading such as **Canada-Provinces-Statistics**. Assign instead a heading of the type described in sec. 2, above, for example, **Canadian provinces-Statistics**.

4. Assignment of multiple headings. If a work discusses a topic both in relation to a country as a whole and as it occurs in each of the first order political divisions of a country, assign two headings. *Example:*

Title: Civil service in the United States.

```
650 #0 $a Civil service $z United States.
650 #0 $a Civil service $z United States $x States.
```

Rivers, Valleys, Watersheds, Etc. H 800

3. References for rivers.

b. Broader terms. (Continued)

(3) **Rivers in more than three countries:** Add the broader term **Rivers** subdivided by the name of the next larger region that encompasses all of the countries in which the river is located. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Niger River
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z Africa, West
```

Exception: For rivers located in more than three first order political divisions of Canada, Great Britain, or the United States, add the broader term **Rivers-- [country]**. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Missouri River
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z United States
```

Do not add a broader term field from the name of a larger stream of which a river is a tributary.

4. Forks and branches of rivers.

a. **Directional fork or branch names.** If the fork or branch name is directional (of the type **South Fork, East Fork, Middle Fork, Northwest Branch**, etc.), formulate the heading as follows (even if this formulation does not correspond with the BGN formulation):

```
151 ## $a [name of main river], [...] Fork or Branch
      ([qualifier])
451 ## $a [...] Fork or Branch, [name of main river]
      ([qualifier])
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z [place]
```

Note: Formulate the qualifier to correspond with the extent of the fork or branch alone, not with that of the main stream.

Example:

```
151 ## $a Salmon River, Middle Fork (Idaho)
451 ## $a Middle Fork, Salmon River (Idaho)
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z Idaho
```

H 800 Rivers, Valleys, Watersheds, Etc.

4. *Forks and branches of rivers.* (Continued)

b. Substantive fork or branch names. If the fork or branch name is substantive (of the type **Clear Fork, Clark Fork, Tug Fork, Bear Branch**, etc.), formulate the heading in the same manner as an individually named river. *Example:*

151 ## \$a Clark Fork (Mont. and Idaho)
[The fork is a part of the Columbia River system]

5. *Wild and scenic rivers.* Establish headings for such entities in the same manner as headings for parks and reserves (cf. H 1925).

The names of rivers within such headings may be in a form different from the form of the heading for the river itself. *Example:*

151 ## \$a Middle Fork Clearwater Wild and Scenic River System
(Idaho)

6. *Deltas.* A delta is a low-lying plain composed of stream-borne sediments deposited by a river at its mouth. The practice of using **–Delta** as a free-floating subdivision under names of rivers was discontinued in 1991. Establish headings for deltas by adding the term **Delta** to the heading for the river. Formulate the qualifier according to the standard rules for qualifying geographic features in H 810 to correspond to the geographic extent of the delta itself, rather than that of the whole river, for example, **Mississippi River Delta (La.)**; **Nile River Delta (Egypt)**. Establish a delta formed by the confluence of two rivers and known by a hyphenated form in the form in which it is best known, for example, **Peace-Athabasca Delta (Alta.)**.

7. *Estuaries.* An estuary is the broad, partly enclosed mouth or lower course of a river where its current meets the sea tide. The practice of using **Estuary** as a free-floating term added to names of rivers was discontinued in 1991. Generally, establish headings for river estuaries by adding the term **Estuary** to the heading for the river. If the heading for the river is established in inverted form, add a comma before the term **Estuary**, for example, **Ythan, River, Estuary (Scotland)**. Formulate the qualifier according to the standard rules for qualifying geographic headings in H 810 to correspond to the geographic extent of the estuary itself, rather than that of the whole river, for example, **Columbia River Estuary (Or. and Wash.)**. Establish estuaries known by specific names, by names that do not include the word **River**, or not associated with a river under their own names, for example, **Forth, Firth of (Scotland)**; **Dee Estuary (Wales and England)**; **Tracy Arm (Alaska)**. Establish an estuary formed by the confluence of two rivers and known by a hyphenated form in the form in which it is best known, for example, **Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary (Calif.)**.

Rivers, Valleys, Watersheds, Etc. H 800

8. Valleys. **Valley** designates the flatlands extending along the course of a river and its tributaries. The practice of using **Valley** as a free-floating term added to names of rivers and river systems was discontinued in July 1995. Generally establish headings for valleys by adding the term **Valley** to the heading for the name of the river, for example, **Hudson River Valley (N.Y. and N.J.)**. If the heading for the river is established in inverted form, add a comma before the term **Valley**, for example, **Medway, River, Valley (Scotland)**. If reference sources or bibliographic titles indicate that the word **River** is not part of the name of the valley, **River** may be omitted, for example, **San Joaquin Valley (Calif.)** [*not San Joaquin River Valley (Calif.)*]. Establish river valleys known by other names under those names, for example, **Airedale (England)**. Add 451 fields for alternative forms with or without the term **River**. If the river is not yet established, establish a heading for the river at the same time. Use the same qualifier for both the river and the valley headings. Make broader term references of the type **Valleys-[place]** corresponding to the references of the type **Rivers-[place]** that are made for the river. Do not formulate headings based on the names of two rivers in combination with each other. Instead, formulate separate headings based on each individual river. For example, for a work that discusses the Sacramento and lower San Joaquin valleys, formulate the following two headings:

151 ## \$a Sacramento Valley (Calif.)
151 ## \$a San Joaquin Valley (Calif.)

9. Watersheds. A watershed is the entire region or area that a river, river system, or other body of water drains, including mountainous areas. The practice of using **Watershed** as a free-floating term added to names of rivers and lakes was discontinued in March 1993. Establish headings for watersheds by adding the term **Watershed** to the heading for the name of the river, lake, or other body of water. If the heading for the river, etc., is established in inverted form, add a comma before the term **Watershed**, for example, **Snake River, South Fork, Watershed (Idaho)**. If the body of water is not yet established, establish a heading for it at the same time. Use the term **Watershed** even though the work being cataloged may use another expression, such as basin, drainage basin, river basin, catchment area, etc. (Although river basins are designated as watersheds, geological basins are established as such, using the term **Basin**, for example, **Diamond Basin (Nev.)**.) Generally retain the same qualifier as that used for the river, etc. Make broader term references of the type **Watersheds-[place]** corresponding to the references of the type **Rivers-[place]** that are made for the river, etc. Do not routinely undertake research to determine the full extent of the drainage area. If readily available information indicates that the geographic extent of the watershed of a major body of water substantially exceeds the boundaries of the jurisdiction(s) in which the body of water is located, establish the heading for the watershed to reflect that broader extent and make appropriate broader term references. Make a used for reference from the name of the watershed with

H 800 Rivers, Valleys, Watersheds, Etc.

9. Watersheds. (Continued)

the same qualifier as the heading for the body of water. Provide a scope note delineating the geographic extent. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Winnipeg, Lake, Watershed
451 ## $a Winnipeg, Lake, Watershed (Man.)
550 ## $w g $a Watersheds $z Northwestern States
550 ## $w g $a Watersheds $z Ontario
550 ## $w g $a Watersheds $z Prairie Provinces
680 ## $i Here are entered works on the area drained by Lake
      Winnipeg, which extends from the lake in Manitoba east
      to Lake Superior, west to the Rockies, and south to
      Minnesota, the Dakotas, and Montana.
```

Do not establish watershed headings based on the names of two rivers in combination with each other. Instead, establish separate watershed headings for each river. For example, for a work that discusses the Virgin River-Meadow Valley Wash drainage basin, establish the following two headings:

```
151 ## $a Virgin River Watershed
151 ## $a Meadow Valley Wash Watershed (Nev.)
```

10. River regions. Region designates the largest area associated with a river, consisting not only of the drainage basin itself but also other adjacent territories beyond the basin. Following the instructions in H 760, formulate free-floating phrase headings for the names of regions of rivers by adding the word **Region** to the river name, rather than to the heading for the valley or watershed. *Example:*

```
651 #0 $a Potomac River Region.
[not 651 #0 $a Potomac River Valley Region.]
[not 651 #0 $a Potomac River Watershed Region.]
```

*Note: Names of valley regions not associated with rivers may be formulated on a free-floating basis in accordance with H 760, for example, **Death Valley Region (Calif. and Nev.)**.*

Geographic Subdivision Information H 835 in Name Authority Records

BACKGROUND: *In February 1999, the Library of Congress began using the 781 field (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry–Geographic Subdivision) in name authority records for geographic name headings that may also be used as geographic subdivisions on a limited basis. This field is used to record the geographic subdivision form in a format this is both eye-readable and manipulable for purposes of machine validation.*

Prior to February 1999, subdivision treatment decisions for selected geographic name headings that fell outside the scope of the standard rules, or whose geographic status was ambiguous or not readily apparent, were recorded in 667 fields in the name authority records for those entities, as in the following examples:

```
151 ## $a Sabah
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: As a geographic subdivision, this
      heading is used indirectly through Malaysia.
```

```
151 ## $a Washington (D.C.)
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: As a geographic subdivision, this
      heading is used directly.
```

Since 1999, the 667 field is also used to record the fact that a geographic name heading is not appropriate for use as a geographic subdivision. Headings for geographic entities within cities that are qualified by the name of the city, such as city sections, districts, neighborhoods, etc., may not be used as geographic subdivisions. For such headings, a 667 field with standard text may be added, as in the following example:

```
151 ## $a Hollywood (Los Angeles, Calif.)
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
      geographic subdivision.
```

H 835 Geographic Subdivision Information in Name Authority Records

Procedures have not yet been developed for Library of Congress catalogers to include either a 781 field or a 667 field of the second type in new geographic name authority records. According to instructions in Descriptive Cataloging Manual Z1, NACO catalogers have the option of including 781 fields in new geographic name authority records for jurisdictions that may be used as geographic subdivisions and 667 fields in new geographic name authority records for geographics that are not appropriate for use as geographic subdivisions. They may also add such fields to existing geographic name authority records. In revising an existing name authority record that contains a subject cataloging usage note in a 667 field indicating the proper geographic subdivision form, they may delete the 667 field and replace it with a 781 field.

In the future, the Library of Congress may initiate projects to convert geographic subdivision data that remain in 667 fields of existing records to 781 fields; to add 781 fields to other existing geographic name authority records for jurisdictions that may be used as geographic subdivisions; and to add 667 fields to existing geographic name authority records for entities that are not appropriate for use as geographic subdivisions. In the meantime, subject catalogers may request that 781 fields with geographic subdivision data be added to existing name authority records for problematic geographic headings according to the procedures in this instruction sheet. For instructions on including this field in the authority record for a proposed new geographic subject heading, see H 836 and H 200, sec. 11. For instructions on determining the appropriate geographic subdivision form, see H 830.

The following are examples of geographic subdivision data in 781 fields in name authority records:

```
151 ## $a France
781 #0 $z France
```

```
151 ## $a Paris (France)
781 #0 $z France $z Paris
```

```
151 ## $a Lycia
781 #0 $z Turkey $z Lycia
```

```
151 ## $a Sydney (N.S.W.)
781 #0 $z Australia $z Sydney (N.S.W.)
```

```
151 ## $a Valencia (Spain : Region)
781 #0 $z Spain $z Valencia (Region)
```

Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, H 980 West Bank, and Palestine

BACKGROUND: *The headings Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, and West Bank are established without a geographic qualifier. This instruction sheet describes subject heading practice for these places and for entities located within them, as well as usage of the headings Palestine and Palestinian National Authority.*

1. Geographic subdivision. Assign **Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, Jerusalem, and West Bank** directly after topics without interposing the name of any larger geographic entity. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Law \$z Gaza Strip.
650 #0 \$a Land settlement \$z Golan Heights.
650 #0 \$a City planning \$z Jerusalem.
650 #0 \$a Public health \$z West Bank.

Divide localities that are entirely within the boundaries of the Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, or West Bank through those headings. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Jews \$z Gaza Strip \$z Gaza.
650 #0 \$a Pottery \$z West Bank \$z Jericho.

2. Subject headings for entities within Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, and West Bank. Qualify subject headings for geographic features or other entities that are located entirely within one of these places by the appropriate territory or city. *Examples:*

151 ## \$a Via Dolorosa (Jerusalem)
151 ## \$a Shatti (Gaza Strip : Refugee camp)
151 ## \$a Qanah River Cave (West Bank)

Note: The practice for qualifying subject headings for entities in the West Bank or Gaza Strip differs from the practice for name headings. Name headings for jurisdictions in those locations are not qualified.

H 980 Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, West Bank, and Palestine

2. *Subject headings for entities within Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, and West Bank.* (Continued)

Do not qualify headings for rivers or other geographic entities that are located both in Israel and one of these places. *Examples:*

151 ## \$a Alexander River
[located in Israel and the West Bank]

151 ## \$a Besor River
[located in Israel and the Gaza Strip]

Note: Name headings for jurisdictions within these places are established without qualifiers, for example, **Hebron**, **Nablus**, **Gaza**, etc.

When formulating 550 (broader term) fields, divide the topical heading directly by the specific place or places where the entity is located. *Examples:*

151 ## \$a Mount of Olives (Jerusalem)
550 ## \$w g \$a Mountains \$x Jerusalem

110 ## \$a Herodium (West Bank)
550 ## \$w g \$a Castles \$z West Bank

151 ## \$a Besor River
550 ## \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Gaza Strip
550 ## \$w g \$a Rivers \$z Israel
550 ## \$w g \$a Wadis \$z Gaza Strip
550 ## \$w g \$a Wadis \$z Israel

3. **Palestine.** Assign the subject heading **Palestine** to works about the region on the eastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea that in ancient times was called the Land of Canaan, later the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, and in modern times comprises the entire state of Israel, as well as the various disputed territories.

Do not use this heading to refer specifically to the territories that are being transferred from Israeli to Palestinian control by agreements between Israel and the Palestinian National Authority negotiated in the 1990s. Use the headings **West Bank** and/or **Gaza Strip**, as appropriate, to refer to these geographic areas.

Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, H 980 West Bank, and Palestine

4. *Palestinian National Authority.* The heading **Palestinian National Authority** has been established in the name authority file. Although it is tagged 151, it represents a governmental entity, not a geographic area.

Do not treat this heading as a geographic heading. Do not assign it as a geographic subdivision after topical headings or subdivisions.

Assign this heading, tagged 651, only to works about the Palestinian National Authority as a governmental entity. General free-floating topical or form subdivisions that are usable under any type of heading may be used under this heading, if appropriate. Subdivisions that are normally free-floating under place names may be established under this heading, if they are appropriate for use under the name of a governmental entity, for example, **–Appropriations and expenditures** or **–Officials and employees**.

Since the territories controlled by the Palestinian National Authority do not currently have international recognition as a "country," nor an internationally recognized name, use the headings **West Bank** and/or **Gaza Strip**, as appropriate, to refer to these geographic areas. If a work is limited in scope to those parts of the West Bank or Gaza Strip under Palestinian control, this may be brought out by assigning **Palestinian National Authority** as an additional heading, in accordance with the guidelines above.

*Note: Headings consisting of **Palestinian National Authority** in the \$a subfield in combination with a \$b or \$t subfield may also be assigned as subject headings, tagged 610. Examples:*

610 10 \$a Palestinian National Authority. \$b Wizārat al-Tarbiyah
wa-al-Ta'lim al-‘Ālī.

(The heading above, which designates the Authority's Ministry of Education and Higher Education, may be assigned as a subject heading to a work about the Ministry.)

610 10 \$a Palestinian National Authority. \$t Qānūn raqm bi-sha'n
tashji' al-istithmar (1995).

(The heading above, which designates the Authority's 1995 law on the encouragement of investment, may be assigned as a subject heading to a work about the law.)

H 980 Jerusalem, Gaza Strip, Golan Heights, West Bank, and Palestine

5. *Geographic area codes.* Assign the following codes for these entities:

Gaza Strip	awgz
Golan Heights	a-sy
Jerusalem	a-is and/or awba, as appropriate
Palestine	a-is awgz awba
West Bank	awba

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Compact disc catalogs (*H 1361*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and topical headings.

\$x Comparative method

Use under disciplines for works on methods of comparing data relevant to the field.

\$v Comparative studies

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, individual Christian denominations, and religious topics.

\$x Competitions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Composition

Use under natural substances of unfixed composition, including soils, plants, animals, farm products, etc., for the results of chemical analyses of those substances.

See also –**Analysis**

\$x Computer-aided design (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Computer-assisted instruction

Use under topical headings for works on an automated method of instruction in which a student interacts directly with instructional materials stored in a computer.

\$v Computer games

Use under subjects.

\$x Computer network resources

Use under subjects for works on computer network resources available for research in various fields.

\$x Computer networks (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Computer networks **\$x Security measures** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Computer programs (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings for works on computer programs, whether or not lists of machine instructions are included.

See also –**Software**

\$x Computer simulation (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

\$v Concordances (*H 1670*)

Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), and uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures and literary forms.

\$v Congresses (*H 1460*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Congresses **\$x Attendance** (*H 1460*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Conservation and restoration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of art objects, library materials, types of architecture, types of buildings, etc., for works on preserving and restoring those items.

See also –**Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration** under names of cities and city sections

\$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual and groups of animals, plants and crops, and pests.

\$v Conversion tables (*H 2160*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Corrosion (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, metals and metal compounds, and types of engineering structures, equipment, and vehicles.

\$x Corrupt practices (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under types of organizations, activities, and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations, activities, and industries.

\$x Cost control

Use under topical headings.

\$x Cost effectiveness

Use under topical headings.

\$x Cost of operation

Use under topical headings.

\$x Costs

Use under topical headings.

\$v Cross-cultural studies (*H 1510*)

Use under topical headings for works which report the results of cross-cultural studies on those topics or discuss the methods and techniques of conducting such studies.

\$x Cult (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual deities, divine persons, saints, and persons worshipped for works on systems of beliefs or rituals associated with them.

\$x Curricula (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual educational institutions and under types of education and educational institutions for works about courses offered at those institutions or in those fields.

Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual educational institutions.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Customer services (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of organizations and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations and industries.

\$x Data processing

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings.

\$v Data tape catalogs

Use under subjects.

\$v Databases (*H 1520*)

Use under subjects as a form subdivision for actual databases or as a topical subdivision for works on databases on those subjects.

\$x Dating

Use under types of objects for the techniques of fixing the date of their origination.

\$x Decision making

Use under topical headings for works on the process of arriving at decisions for action, including attempts to formulate a general theory based on mathematical analysis and psychological experiment.

\$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc., in which defects may exist.

\$x Defects \$x Reporting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc.

\$x Defense measures (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, utilities, installations, etc., for measures undertaken for their protection during times of conflict.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Departments (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]-[*country*] for works discussing collectively the departments of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Budget-France- Departments**.

\$x Design (*H 1532*)

Use under topical headings where **-Design and construction** would not be appropriate.

\$x Design and construction (*H 1532*)

Use under individual examinations and types of examinations; also use under types of structures, machines, equipment, etc., for works discussing their engineering and/or construction.

\$v Designs and plans (*H 1532*)

Use under architectural headings, including types of buildings and rooms, and under landscape headings, including types of gardens and parks, for works containing architectural drawings.

\$x Deterioration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of substances, materials, products, etc.

\$v Dictionaries (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

See also **-Encyclopedias**

\$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.] (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Dictionaries, Juvenile (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Digitization (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of library materials.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Directories (*H 1558*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, Christian denominations, types of organizations, and topical headings for individual directories containing names, addresses, and other identifying data.

See also –**Registers**; –**Telephone directories**

\$x Discipline

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, classes of persons, individual religions, and Christian denominations for the enforcement of rules affecting conduct or action.

\$v Discography (*H 1361*)

Use under names of individual persons and under topical headings for lists or catalogs of sound recordings.

See also –**Audiotape catalogs**; –**Songs and music**–**Discography**

\$x Documentation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on the processes by which documents on those topics are made available.

\$v Drama (*H 1780*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for plays or musical dramatic works on those subjects.

\$v Drawings

Use as a form subdivision under technical topics for collections of drawings, plans, etc., and as a topical subdivision for the technique of making such drawings, unless a separate heading for the technique has been provided.

\$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual materials, products, and objects dried.

\$x Dust control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Early works to 1800 (*H 1576*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and appropriate topical headings to designate individual works written or issued before 1800.

\$x Earthquake effects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

\$x Econometric models (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings for works that employ mathematical or statistical models used to test or measure economic phenomena.

\$x Economic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings and individual wars.

See also –**Economic conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups, including occupational groups, for works discussing the economic history or economic conditions in general of a place, class of persons, or ethnic group.

\$x Electromechanical analogies (*H 2040*)

Use under scientific and technical topics.

\$v Electronic discussion groups

Use under subjects.

\$x Electronic information resources

Use under subjects.

\$x Electronic publishing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

\$x Employees

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, services, establishments, and institutions.

See also –**Officials and employees**

\$v Encyclopedias (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Encyclopedias, Juvenile (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Endowments

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and disciplines.

\$x Energy conservation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, facilities, etc.

\$x Energy consumption (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, military services, and topical headings.

\$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual military services, events, and wars, and under types of industries, processes, machines, facilities, constructions, chemicals, materials, and events for environmental issues associated with their operation, creation, use, or planning and execution. Also use under individual diseases for environmental aspects of their causation or development.

See also –**Environmental conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$x Equipment and supplies

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, processes, services, activities, institutions, disciplines, animals, plants and crops, vehicles, and wars.

See also –**Instruments**; –**Safety appliances**

\$x Estimates (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of engineering, technical processes, industries, etc., for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion.

\$x Evaluation (*H 1591*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of institutions, products, services, equipment, activities, projects, and programs for works on methods of assessing or appraising those subjects, or for works on both the methods and results of assessing them.

See also –**Testing**

See also –**Rating of** under classes of persons.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Examinations

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, educational institutions, and military services and under types of educational institutions for works discussing examinations given by those organizations; under classes of persons for works discussing examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for works discussing examinations given about those persons, titles, or topics.

\$x Examinations \$v Study guides

\$v Examinations, questions, etc.

Use under classes of persons for compilations of questions and answers for examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for compilations of questions and answers for examinations about those persons, titles, or topics.

See also –**Problems, exercises, etc.**

\$v Excerpts

Use under motion picture forms and genres and under forms and types of musical compositions.

\$v Exhibitions (H 1593)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Bibliography–Exhibitions**

\$x Experiments

Use under scientific and technical topics for discussions about experiments and instructions for carrying them out.

\$x Expertising (May Subd Geog)

Use under headings for art forms and under types of art objects, types of architecture, and types of buildings.

\$v Facsimiles (H 1595)

Use under headings or subdivisions designating types of printed or written materials, documents, etc.

See also –**Manuscripts–Facsimiles; –Maps–Facsimiles**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Fiction (*H 1720; H 1790*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of stories or novels on those topics. Also use under names of individual persons and historic events for individual works of biographical or historical fiction, and under animals for individual stories about animals.

\$x Field work (*H 1645*)

Use under disciplines for discussions of the techniques of carrying out work in the field to gain practical experience through firsthand observation.

\$v Film catalogs (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Finance (*H 1624*)

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, corporate bodies, services, technical operations, etc., for works on the raising and expenditure of funds. Use under names of individual government bodies only for works on their management of nonappropriated funds. Use under ethnic groups for the financial affairs of the group as a whole.

See also –**Appropriations and expenditures** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual government agencies.

See also –**Finance, Personal** under names of individual persons and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

\$x Fires and fire prevention (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of institutions, buildings, industries, and vehicles.

\$v Folklore (*H 1627; H 1720*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing those topics as themes in folklore and for collections of folklore texts on those subjects.

\$x Food service (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual legislative bodies and types of institutions, organized activities, etc., for provisions for meals and food in those enterprises. Do not subdivide geographically under legislative bodies.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Forecasting (*H 1628*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

\$z Foreign countries (*H 1919.5*)

Use under ethnic groups, individual languages, individual literatures, military services, and types of publications qualified by language or nationality.

\$x Foreign influences (*H 1675*)

Use under headings for civilizations of places, or particular aspects of those civilizations, including art forms, literary forms, philosophies, intellectual life, etc., under ethnic groups, and under disciplines when further subdivided by place for works discussing general outside cultural influences on those civilizations, groups, or disciplines.

\$x Forgeries (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and under types of art objects, documents, etc.

\$v Forms

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works consisting of, or containing, substantial numbers of blank forms.

\$v Formulae, receipts, prescriptions

Use under branches and systems of medicine.

See also **–Medicine–Formulae, receipts, prescriptions** under ethnic groups.

\$x Fuel systems

Use under types of equipment and vehicles.

\$x Fume control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

\$x Geographic information systems (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Government policy (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1642*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently governmental.

See also headings of the type **[topic] and state** and **[topic] policy**.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual commodities.

\$x Graphic methods

Use under disciplines, types of technical processes, scientific phenomena, etc., for the technique of solving problems by means of graphs.

\$v Guidebooks (*H 1645*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and parks, etc., and certain topical headings.

See also –**Tours** under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Handbooks, manuals, etc. (*H 1646*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Amateurs' manuals**; –**Laboratory manuals**; –**Observers' manuals**

\$x Health aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Heating and ventilation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

\$x Heating and ventilation \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

\$x Heraldry

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings for the devising, granting, and use of armorial insignia.

\$x Historiography

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works and treaties, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History (*H 1647; H 1845*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y To 1500 (*H 1647*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x History \$y 16th century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 17th century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 18th century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 19th century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 20th century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$y 21st century (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x History \$v Chronology (*H 1367*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical.

See also –**Chronology**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History \$x Philosophy

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

\$x History \$v Sources (*H 1647; H 2080*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical for collections or discussions of source materials of all types, such as legal documents, letters, diaries, family papers, visual and moving image materials, assembled at a later time to serve as source materials for use by students, scholars, etc., in their research on the subject.

See also –**Sources**

\$x History and criticism (*H 1647*)

Use under literary, music, film, television, and video recording form headings.

\$x History of doctrines

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y Early church, ca. 30-600

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y Middle Ages, 600-1500

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 16th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 17th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 18th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 19th century

Use under religious topics.

\$x History of doctrines \$y 20th century

Use under religious topics.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x History of doctrines \$y 21st century

Use under religious topics.

\$x Hot weather conditions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on procedures to be followed during hot weather conditions.

See also –**Tropical conditions**

\$v Humor

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

\$x Hurricane effects (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

\$x Identification

Use under classes of persons and topical headings. Also use under groups of animals and plants and types of objects as a topical or form subdivision for works presenting the characteristics of a group for the purpose of determining the names of its members.

\$v Illustrations (*H 1659*)

Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures, literary forms, and types of published materials.

\$v In art (*H 362; H 910; H 1250; H 1935*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and individual Christian denominations, and under uniform titles, for their representation as physical objects in artistic works. Use as a form subdivision for works consisting of reproductions of artistic works that depict the place, body, etc. Use as a topical subdivision for works that discuss the place, body, etc., as a theme in art.

\$v Indexes (*H 1670*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Concordances**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under scientific topics, individual chemicals, and individual plants and groups of plants.

\$x Influence (*H 1675*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under forms and movements in the visual arts, types of organizations, religions, and individual wars for works discussing their influence.

\$x Information resources

Use under subjects.

See also –**Electronic information resources**

\$x Information resources management (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries and organizations.

\$x Information services (*H 1675.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x Information technology (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under disciplines, types of industries, services, and organizations.

\$x Insignia

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of corporate bodies.

\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1676.5*)

Use under names of individual military services, and under types of merchandise, products, equipment, engineering structures, and buildings, and individual and groups of animals and plants.

\$x Installation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment.

\$x Instruments

Use under scientific and technical disciplines for discussions of the instruments employed in those fields.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Interactive multimedia

Use under subjects.

\$x International cooperation

Use under topical headings.

\$x Internet marketing (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of commodities, products, and services.

\$x Interpretation

Use under individual tests and types of tests.

\$v Inventories

Use under types of industries, institutions, and topical headings for lists or discussions of raw materials, supplies, work in process, finished goods, etc., on hand at a particular time..

\$x Inventory control (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of industries, organizations, and facilities. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under types of industries, organizations, and facilities.

\$v Job descriptions (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupational groups. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under occupational groups.

\$v Juvenile drama (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile fiction (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile films (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Juvenile humor (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile literature (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

\$v Juvenile poetry (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Juvenile software (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings for actual software items, that is, machine-readable editions.

\$v Juvenile sound recordings (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

\$x Koranic teaching

Use under Islamic topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Koran on that topic, for example, **Islamic education–Koranic teaching; War–Religious aspects–Islam–Koranic teaching.**

\$x Labeling (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products.

\$x Labor productivity (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, occupations, and processes.

\$v Laboratory manuals (*H 1646*)

Use under scientific and technical topics for workbooks containing concise background information and directions for performing work, including experiments, in the laboratory.

\$x Landscape architecture (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, institutions, and facilities.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Language

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, individual works entered under title, and under classes of persons, disciplines, types of newspapers, and individual wars.

See also –**Languages** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

See also –**Slang** under individual languages and groups of languages and under topical headings.

\$v Legends (*H 1627; H 1795*)

Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters and uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for collected or individual literary versions of legendary tales about those persons, characters, or topics.

See also –**Romances**

\$x Library resources

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works describing the resources and special collections available on those subjects.

\$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

See also –**Accreditation**; –**Certification**

\$x Licenses \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

\$x Lighting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of vehicles, structures, buildings, rooms, installations, etc.

\$x Linear programming

Use under topical headings.

\$v Literary collections

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections including several literary forms.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Liturgy

Use under individual Jewish and Christian sects and rites; under names of individual Christian monastic and religious orders; and under individual Jewish and Christian ceremonies, rituals, holidays, etc.

\$x Liturgy \$v Texts (*H 2190*)

\$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, business entities, government agencies, and facilities, and under individual plants and groups of plants.

\$v Longitudinal studies (*H 1848*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$x Maintenance and repair

Use under types of objects, including machinery, vehicles, structures, etc., requiring maintenance and repair.

See also –**Repairing**

\$x Management

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc., and under types of industries, industrial plants and processes, special activities, resources, etc.

See also –**Administration**

\$x Manuscripts (*H 1855*)

Use under names of individual persons and families, individual works entered under title, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, groups of authors, literatures, and topical headings.

\$x Manuscripts \$v Catalogs (*H 1855*)

\$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles (*H 1595; H 1855*)

Use under names of individual composers and literary authors and under individual works entered under title.

\$x Manuscripts \$v Indexes

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Manuscripts \$v Microform catalogs (*H 1361*)

\$v Maps (*H 1865*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for individual maps or collections of maps.

See also **–Aerial views** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual educational institutions.

\$x Maps \$v Bibliography

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

\$v Maps \$v Early works to 1800 (*H 1576*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

\$v Maps \$v Facsimiles (*H 1595*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings

\$x Maps \$x Symbols

Use under topical headings.

\$v Maps, Comparative

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Manuscript

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Mental

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Outline and base

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Physical

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Maps, Pictorial

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Topographic

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps, Tourist

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps for children

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., under individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

\$v Maps for people with visual disabilities

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$v Maps for the blind

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

\$x Marketing (*H 1870*)

Use under types of commodities, products, services, and institutions providing products or services.

\$x Materials (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction.

\$x Mathematical models (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Mathematics

Use under topical headings for works on the mathematics employed in those fields.

\$x Measurement

Use under scientific and technical topics for works on the technique of making measurements.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used on a free-floating basis, as appropriate, under subject headings for ethnic groups, including preliterate groups, historic peoples no longer in existence, races, and ethnic groups in the United States, for example, **Berbers; French-Canadians; Aboriginal Australians; Hmong (Asian people); Dinka (African people); Turkic peoples; Minoans; Blacks; Cuban Americans; Scandinavian Americans.** The category also includes the heading **Jews** and headings for Jews of various nationalities, for example, **Jews, Italian,** except for subdivisions noted in the list below and indicated by UF references in the subject authority file. Also included are headings for nationalities such as **Danish, Asians,** and **Ukrainians,** when they are used to designate those nationalities or regional inhabitants *outside* their native countries or regions. The category includes headings for the indigenous peoples of the Western Hemisphere: **Indians;** headings for the five major regional groupings of Indians: **Indians of Central America; Indians of Mexico; Indians of North America; Indians of South America;** and **Indians of the West Indies;** as well as groups of tribes and individual tribes established as subject headings. *Examples:* **Aleuts; Eskimos; Navajo Indians; Spokane Indians; Uto-Aztecan Indians; Zapotec Indians.** The separate pattern list for groups of Indians, H 1152, was discontinued in February 1994. This list does not cover the general headings **Indigenous peoples** and **Tribes,** nor the jurisdictional name headings established to represent the governments of tribes recognized by the United States government, for example, **Spokane Tribe of the Spokane Reservation, Washington.** For subdivisions used under classes of persons, including age and sex groups, social, economic, and political categories, members of religions, occupational groups, etc., see H 1100. Headings for such classes of persons qualified by ethnic or national adjectival qualifiers, such as **African American dentists, French students,** or **Alien labor, Turkish,** are also covered by H 1100 rather than this list.

NATIONALITIES: Do not subdivide headings for nationalities by subdivisions on this list to designate a topic in conjunction with a nationality in its own country. Instead, express the topic by headings of the type: **[topic]–[place]** or **[place]–[topic],** for example, **Mental health–United States, not Americans–Mental health; Spain–Antiquities, not Spanish–Antiquities.** Subdivisions on this list may be used under headings for nationalities only to express topics in conjunction with those nationalities *outside* their native countries, for example, **Spanish–Florida–Antiquities; Turks–Employment–Germany.** For instructions on the construction and use of headings for nationalities, see H 1919.5.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Abstracting and indexing** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1205; H 1670)

\$v **Abstracts** (H 1205)

\$x **Agriculture** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Alcohol use** (*May Subd Geog*)

Amusements, see –**Games**; –**Recreation**

\$v **Anecdotes**

\$x **Anniversaries, etc.**

Use for works discussing or listing dates or commemorations of significant events for the group or group members.

\$x **Anthropometry** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Antiquities** (H 1225)

Use this subdivision and its further subdivisions only under groups extant in modern times.

\$x **Antiquities** \$x **Collection and preservation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for methods of collection.

\$x **Antiquities** \$x **Collectors and collecting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for collectors of antiquities and history of collecting.

\$v **Archives** (H 1230)

Assaults against, see –**Violence against**

Assimilation, Cultural, see –**Cultural assimilation**

Athletics, see –**Sports**

\$x **Attitudes** (H 1955)

Use for works on attitudes or opinions held by members of the group.

For works on public opinion about the group, see –**Public opinion**.

\$v **Audiocassette catalogs** (H 1361)

\$v **Audiotape catalogs** (H 1361)

\$v **Autographs**

\$v **Bio-bibliography** (H 1328)

\$v **Biography** (H 1330)

Biography–Anniversaries, etc., see –**Anniversaries, etc.**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Dictionaries**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Dictionaries** \$x **French, [Italian, etc.]**

\$x **Biography** \$x **History and criticism**

\$v **Biography** \$v **Pictorial works**

\$x **Biography** \$v **Sources**

\$v **Blogs**

\$x **Boats** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Book reviews** (H 2021)

\$x **Books and reading** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1333)

\$v **Caricatures and cartoons**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$x **Jewelry** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Job stress** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Juvenile drama** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile fiction** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile humor** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile poetry** (*H 1690*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** (*H 1574*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Assassination**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Children**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Death and burial**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Education** (*H 1579*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Folklore** (*H 1627*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Genealogy** (*H 1631*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Mythology** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Religious aspects** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Succession**

\$x **Kinship** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on the group's system of rules governing descent, succession, marriage, etc., and determining the relationships of individuals.

\$x **Land tenure** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Languages**

Use for works discussing collectively the languages spoken by the group. Do not use to designate a linguistic family for which a separate heading is established, for example, **Papuan languages; Slavic languages.**

See H 1154 for further subdivisions used under languages.

\$x **Languages** \$v **Texts** (*H 2109*)

Law and legislation, see –Legal status, laws, etc.

\$x **Legal status, laws, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1705*)

\$x **Library resources**

\$x **Life skills assessment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Life skills guides**

\$v **Literary collections**

\$v **Longitudinal studies** (*H 1848*)

\$x **Manuscripts** (*H 1855*)

\$v **Maps** (*H 1865*)

\$x **Marriage customs and rites** (*May Subd Geog*)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Marriage customs and rites, Jewish** instead.

\$x **Material culture** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mathematics**

H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Medals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical examinations** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** \$v **Formulae, receipts, prescriptions**

\$x **Mental health** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Mental health services** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Migrations**

\$x **Missions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing missions to the group. For missions and missionary activities of the group or nationality, use headings of the type **Missions, [...]**, for example, **Missions, Belgian; Missions, Tamil**. Do not use **–Missions** under **Jews**; use **Missions to Jews** instead. For the missionary activities of Judaism, use **Proselytizing–Judaism**.

\$x **Money** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mortality** (*May Subd Geog*)

Mortuary customs, see **–Funeral customs and rites**

\$x **Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jewish museums** instead.

\$v **Music** (H 1917)

Use for music of the group. For music about the group, see **–Songs and music**.

\$x **Music** \$v **Bibliography**

\$x **Music** \$v **Discography**

\$x **Music** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

\$v **Newspapers** (H 1920)

Use under ethnic groups for newspapers of those groups. For example, use under ethnic groups in the United States for individual American ethnic newspapers. For works about ethnic newspapers, use headings of the type [...] **newspapers**, for example, **German American newspapers**.

\$x **Nutrition** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Obituaries**

\$x **Origin**

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

Outside employment, see **–Supplementary employment**

\$x **Pastoral counseling of** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Personal finance, see **–Finance, Personal**

\$x **Physiology**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$x **Study and teaching** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2110)

Use only for works on study and teaching about the group as a topic.

The free-floating subdivision –**Study and teaching**, qualified by level of study, for example, –**Study and teaching (Elementary)**; –**Study and teaching (Secondary)**, may also be used under ethnic groups (cf. H 1095).

\$x **Substance use** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Suffrage** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Suicidal behavior** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Supplementary employment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Surgery** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Taxation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Taxation** \$x **Law and legislation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Telephone directories** (H 1558)

\$x **Time management** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Tobacco use** (*May Subd Geog*)

Tools, see –**Implements**

\$x **Transportation** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2225)

\$x **Trapping** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Travel** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Treaties** (H 2227)

\$x **Tribal citizenship** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Violence against** (*May Subd Geog*)

Vital statistics, see –**Statistics, Vital**

\$x **Warfare** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on the group's methods and technology of waging war.

\$x **Wars** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing collectively the wars in which the group has participated.

Working conditions, see –**Employment**

\$x **Wounds and injuries** (*May Subd Geog*)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Family (H 1631)

Use for discussions of the person's family or relations with family members. Also use for genealogical works. Assign an additional heading for the name of the family.

See also –**Marriage**

\$v Fiction (H 1790)

Use as a form subdivision for works of fiction about the person. For criticism or discussions of fiction about a person, assign [*name of person*]–**In literature** as a topical heading.

\$x Fictional works

Use for criticism of fictional works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally fiction.

See also –**Prose**

\$v Film and video adaptations

Use for discussions or collections of motion picture or video adaptations of the person's creative works.

\$x Finance, Personal (H 1624)

Use for discussions of the person's financial affairs.

See also –**Estate**; –**Will**

\$x First editions

\$x First editions \$v Bibliography

Folktales, see –**Legends**

\$x Forgeries (May Subd Geog)

Use for discussions of forgeries of the person's creative works or signature. In the case of individual forgeries, assign an additional heading for the name of the forger.

\$x Freemasonry

Use for works discussing the person's membership or participation in the Freemasons.

Frequented places, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$x Friends and associates

Use for discussions of the person's close and immediate contacts, such as companions, co-workers.

See also –**Adversaries**; –**Contemporaries**; –**Disciples**; –**Employees**; –**Family**; –**Relations with [specific class of persons or ethnic group]**

Funeral, see –**Death and burial**

Genealogy, see –**Family**

Glossaries, see –**Language–Glossaries, etc.**

Grave, see –**Tomb**

\$x Hadith

Use under imams for works on the oral tradition concerning the deeds and saying of the imam.

Handwriting, see –**Autographs**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x Harmony (H 1438)

Use under composers for works discussing their uses of harmony.

Haunts, see **–Homes and haunts**

\$x Health

Use for works about the person's state of health, including diseases suffered and accounts of specific diseases. For accounts of specific diseases assign an additional heading of the type: [*disease*]**–Patients**–[*place*]**–Biography**.

See also **–Alcohol use**; **–Drug use**; **–Mental health**

\$x Herbarium (H 1427)

\$x Homes and haunts (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing the person's homes or dwellings, favorite places, places he or she habitually frequented, or places associated with the person in some way.

See also **–Birthplace**; **–Palaces**; **–Shrines**; **–Travel**

\$v Humor

Use as a form subdivision for humorous works about the person as well as for works about the person's sense of humor or use of humor. For pictorial humor, see **–Caricatures and cartoons**.

Iconography, see **–Pictorial works**

\$v Illustrations (H 1659)

Use for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of the person's written works.

For works of art depicting the person see **–Art**; **–Portraits**

Imitations, see **–Parodies, imitations, etc.**

\$x Impeachment

\$x Imprisonment

Use for works discussing periods in which the person was actually imprisoned in a correctional institution or a prisoner of war camp. For works discussing periods in which the person was held captive in bondage or confinement, especially under house arrest, as a hostage, or in battle, see **–Captivity, [dates]**.

See also **–Exile**

\$x In bookplates

\$x In literature (H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)

Use for discussions of the person as a theme in belles lettres, including musical dramatic works and individual literary genres. The free-floating phrase heading [*name of person*] **in fiction, drama, poetry, etc.** was discontinued in August 1993. For works of belles-lettres about the person, or in which he or she appears as a character, assign the appropriate form subdivision, for example, **–Drama**, **–Fiction**, **–Literary collections**, **–Poetry**.

\$x In mass media

\$x In motion pictures

\$x In opera

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Map collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of maps.

Marginalia, see –**Library–Marginal notes**; –**Scholia**

\$x Marriage

See also –**Divorce**

\$x Medals

Use for works about medals issued to commemorate the person or his work.

\$v Meditations

Use as a form subdivision for works containing descriptions of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person's life or deeds.

\$x Mental health (H 1890)

Use for works discussing the person's state of mental health, including mental illness and accounts of specific mental disorders. For accounts of specific disorders or situations, assign an additional heading of the type: [*disease*]–**Patients**–[*place*]–**Biography; Psychotherapy patients**–[*place*]–**Biography; etc.**

\$x Military leadership

\$x Miracles

Use under persons to whom miracles are attributed.

\$x Monuments (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1334)

Use for works about monuments erected in honor of the person.

See also –**Museums**; –**Shrines**; –**Statues**; –**Tomb**

\$x Motion picture plays

Use for discussions of film scripts written by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally motion picture plays. For discussions of motion picture adaptations of the person's creative works, see –**Film and video adaptations**.

Motives, themes, see –**Themes, motives**

\$x Museums (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Use for works on museums devoted to the person.

See also –**Archives**; –**Collectibles**; –**Death mask**; –**Relics**; –**Shrines**; –**Tomb**

Music, see –**Songs and music**

\$x Musical instrument collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of musical instruments.

\$v Musical settings

Use as a form subdivision for musical scores or sound recordings in which writings or words of the person have been set to music.

\$x Musical settings **\$x History and criticism**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x Name (H 1919)

Use for discussions of the history, orthography, etymology, etc., of the person's name.

See also –**Anonyms and pseudonyms**; –**Titles**

\$x Natural history collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of natural history items or specimens.

\$v Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.

Use for collections or discussions of the person's notebooks, sketchbooks, etc. Also use for individual works.

\$x Numismatic collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's numismatics collections.

See also –**Coin collections**

\$x Numismatics

Use for works discussing the representation of the person on coins, tokens, medals, paper money, etc.

See also –**Medals**

Old age, see –**Last years**

Opponents, see –**Adversaries**

\$x On postage stamps (H 1945)

Use for works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps.

\$x On television

Use for works that discuss television programming about the person, including dramatic or documentary shows, news programs, and advertising. Do not use for works on the person as a television actor, television host, news anchor, etc.

\$x Oratory

Use for works discussing the person's public speaking ability.

\$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.

\$x Palaces (May Subd Geog)

Paraphrases, see –**Adaptations**

\$x Pardon

Use for works about the person's legal release from the penalty of an offense.

\$v Parodies, imitations, etc.

Use as both a form and topical subdivision for imitations, either comic or distorted, of the person's creative works.

Patronage of the arts, see –**Art patronage**

\$x Performances (May Subd Geog)

Use under performing artists or performers of all types for works about their performances. Also use under composers, choreographers, etc. for works about performances of their compositions or works.

See also –**Dramatic production**; –**Stage history**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x Stamp collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's stamp collections. For works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps, see **–On postage stamps**.

\$x Statues (May Subd Geog)

Use for works discussing or containing reproductions of statues representing the person.

Stories of operas, see **–Stories, plots, etc.**

\$v Stories, plots, etc.

Use under composers, choreographers, and literary authors for works summarizing or discussing the stories or plots of their works.

Style, Literary, see **–Literary art; –Literary style**

\$x Symbolism

Use for discussions of the symbols employed by the person in his creative works.

Table-talk, see **–Quotations**

Tales, see **–Legends; –Romances**

\$x Teachings

Use for works discussing in general the body of knowledge, precepts, or doctrines the person taught to others.

\$x Technique

Use under literary authors for discussions of structural and formal elements in drama, fiction, and narrative poetry, such as asides, soliloquies, unities, scene structure, and stream-of-consciousness.

Textual criticism, see **–Criticism, Textual**

\$v Thematic catalogs (H 1322, H 1438)

Use under composers for listings of the themes of their musical compositions.

\$x Themes, motives

Use for discussions of the themes and motives in the person's creative works. Assign an additional heading for an individual theme.

Theology, see **–Religion**

\$x Titles

Use for terms or phrases applied to the person as titles of address, titles of nobility, etc.

\$x Tomb

Use for works about the person's grave, interred bones, etc. For works on disinterred bones, see **–Relics**.

See also **–Death and burial**

\$x Tragedies

Use for criticism of tragedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragedies.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x Tragicomedies

Use for criticism of tragicomedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragicomedies.

\$v Translations (*H 2220*)

Use for collections of translations of a literary author. Do not use as a form heading for single translations.

\$x Translations \$x History and criticism

\$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]

\$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism

\$x Travel (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works about voyages and travels undertaken by the person whether written by the persons or by others. When the subdivision is further subdivided by place, assign an additional heading of the type [*place*]-**Description and travel**.

See also –**Exile**

\$v Trials, litigation, etc. (*H 2228*)

Use for proceedings or discussions of proceedings of civil or criminal actions to which the person is a party.

\$x Versification

Use for discussions of a literary author's technique of writing verse, including the structural composition of poetry, rhythm, rhyme, alliteration, etc.

Video adaptations, see –**Film and video adaptations**

Views on [specific topic]

For works discussing the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his or her life and works, see –**Knowledge**-[*specific topic*].

Views on aesthetics, see –**Aesthetics**

Views on ethics, see –**Ethics**

Views on politics and society, see –**Political and social views**

Views on religion, see –**Religion**

Views on society, see –**Political and social views**

Voyages, see –**Travel**

Weblogs, see –**Blogs**

\$x Will

Use for discussions of the person's legal declaration regarding the disposition of his property or estate, including discussions or cases of contested wills.

See also –**Estate**

Writing skill, see –**Literary art**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

BACKGROUND: *Until 1985, the **Subject Cataloging Manual** and **Library of Congress Subject Headings** provided two separate lists of subdivisions used under places, one for cities (H 1135) and one for regions, countries, etc. (H 1145). When the "city flip" was discontinued (cf. H 832), it was possible to resolve the few remaining discrepancies between the two lists and to consolidate them into a single list of subdivisions used, as applicable, under regions, countries, cities, etc. This instruction sheet superseded and replaced H 1135 and H 1145.*

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used, within the limitations of the usage notes, as free-floating subdivisions under headings for geographic place names including continents; regions; islands; countries; states, provinces, and equivalent jurisdictions; counties and other local jurisdictions larger than cities; and headings for metropolitan areas, suburban areas, and regions based on names of cities. They may also be used, except as noted, under names of cities established as valid AACR2 name headings, under names of extinct cities established as subject headings (in accordance with the provisions of H 715), and under names of city sections, districts, or quarters (in accordance with the provisions of H 720). Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under headings for geographic features and designated areas, including parks, reserves, gardens, streets and roads, refugee camps, etc., or regions based on geographic features following the guidelines for the assignment of such headings given in H 760. Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under names of bodies of water. For additional subdivisions used only under names of bodies of water, streams, etc., see H 1145.5. This list also covers the jurisdictional name headings established to represent the governments of tribes recognized by the United States government, for example, **Spokane Tribe of the Spokane Reservation, Washington**. This list does not cover names of celestial bodies and other astronomical features. This list also does not cover international organizations and corporate bodies that are not jurisdictions, for example, **Commonwealth of Independent States**, nor the corporate name headings that represent government agencies that control parks, etc., for example, **Yosemite National Park (Agency : U.S.)**.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUBDIVISIONS: In 1997 restrictions were lifted on use of subdivisions of the type –**16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th] century** under –**Civilization** and –**Intellectual life**, thereby allowing their use under geographic headings at any level. At the same time, subdivisions of the type –**16th [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th] century** were added under the subdivisions –**Economic conditions**; –**History**; –**History, Military**; –**History, Naval**; –**Politics and government**; –**Social conditions**; and –**Social life and customs**. These subdivisions were added to facilitate subject access by time period, primarily by authorizing their free-floating use under places smaller than countries, where chronological subdivisions were previously not established or used. These free-floating century subdivisions should be used with caution under names of countries and other geographic entities where chronological subdivisions for specific time periods have been established. Assign these century subdivisions only where there is no conflict with chronological subdivisions established in the subject authority file.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

\$x Abstracting and indexing (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1205; H 1670)

\$v Abstracts (H 1205)

\$x Administrative and political divisions

\$x Aerial exploration

Do not use under cities.

\$v Aerial film and video footage

\$v Aerial photographs (H 1210.5)

\$v Aerial views (H 1210.5)

\$x Altitudes

Do not use under cities.

\$v Anecdotes

\$x Annexation to [. . .]

Do not use under cities.

\$x Anniversaries, etc.

\$x Antiquities (H 1225; H 1845)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for methods of collection.

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities \$x Collectors and collecting (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for collectors of antiquities and history of collecting.

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Byzantine (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Celtic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Germanic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Phoenician (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Roman (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Slavic (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Antiquities, Turkish (H 1225)

Do not use under names of extinct cities.

\$x Appropriations and expenditures (H 1624)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

\$x Appropriations and expenditures \$x Effect of inflation on (H 1580)

\$x Archival resources (H 1230)

\$x Area

Use for descriptions of the physical area of a place as well as for works on measurement of the area of a place.

\$x Armed Forces (*May Subd Geog*)

Use only under countries and under regions larger than countries.

See H 1159 for further subdivisions used under military services.

\$v Audiocassette catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Audiotape catalogs (H 1361)

\$v Bathymetric maps

\$v Bio-bibliography (H 1328)

\$v Biography (H 1330; H 1845)

See also **–History–[period subdivision]–Biography**

\$v Biography \$v Anecdotes

\$v Biography \$v Caricatures and cartoons

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]

\$x Biography \$x History and criticism

\$v Biography \$v Humor

\$v Biography \$v Pictorial works (H 1935)

\$v Biography \$v Portraits (H 1935)

\$x Biography \$v Sources

\$v Book reviews (H 2021)

\$x Boundaries (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1333.5)

\$x Buildings, structures, etc. (H 1334; H 1334.5)

Use only under cities and city sections.

\$x Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration

Use only under cities and city sections.

\$v Calendars

\$x Capital and capitol

Do not use under cities.

\$v Census (H 1366)

\$x Census \$x Law and legislation (H 1705)

\$v Census, [date] (H 1366)

For specific federal censuses of the United States, assign the heading **United States–Census, [ordinal number], [date]**.

\$x Centennial celebrations, etc.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

\$v Charters

Use only under states, counties, cities, etc., of the United States and under indigenous jurisdictions of the United States.

\$v Charters, grants, privileges

Use only under countries, etc., other than the United States, and under cities other than those of the United States.

\$x Church history (H 1845)

\$x Church history \$y 16th century

\$x Church history \$y 17th century

\$x Church history \$y 18th century

\$x Church history \$y 19th century

\$x Church history \$y 20th century

\$x Church history \$y 21st century

\$x Civilization (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 16th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 17th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 18th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 19th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 20th century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$y 21st century (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$x Foreign influences (H 1370)

\$x Civilization \$x Philosophy

\$x Claims

\$x Claims vs. ...

\$x Climate

\$x Climate \$v Observations

\$x Colonial influence

\$x Colonies

[name of country]–Colonies may also be used under topical headings, for example, **Education–Great Britain–Colonies**.

See H 1149.5 for further subdivisions.

\$x Colonization

\$x Commerce (May Subd Geog)

Use for works on foreign or domestic trade of the place. For works on reciprocal trade between countries, cities, etc., assign a combination of headings:

[place A]–Commerce–[place B]; [place B]–Commerce–[place A].

\$x Commercial policy

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Control \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Cytogenetics
\$x Cytology
\$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Detection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Development \$x Endocrine aspects
\$x Digestive organs
\$x Diseases⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Alternative treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Chemotherapy⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Chiropractic treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Diagnosis⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Diet therapy⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Epidemiology⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Genetic aspects⁴
\$x Diseases \$x Homeopathic treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Molecular aspects⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Nursing⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Nutritional aspects⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases \$x Prevention⁴
\$x Diseases \$x Treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dissection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dormancy⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of aircraft on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of altitude on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of chemicals on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of contaminated sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Effect of dams on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dredging on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drugs on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of exotic animals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fishing on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of habitat modification on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of human beings on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of hunting on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of insecticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of logging on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of music on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of noise on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of odors on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of oil spills on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pesticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of predation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of roads on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sound on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of storms on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stray currents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of surface active agents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water acidification on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water currents on (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Effect of water levels on *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Effect of water pollution on *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Effect of water quality on *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Eggs *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Eggs \$x Counting *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Eggs \$x Dispersal *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Eggs \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Eggs \$x Incubation *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Embryology
\$x Embryos *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Embryos \$x Anatomy
\$x Embryos \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Embryos \$x Physiology
\$x Embryos \$x Transplantation *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Endocrinology
\$x Environmental enrichment *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Equipment and supplies
\$x Evolution *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Exercise *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Exercise \$x Physiological aspects
\$x Feed utilization efficiency *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Feeding and feeds⁷ *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Climatic factors *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Contamination *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Feeding and feeds \$v Recipes
\$x Fertility *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Fetuses
\$x Fetuses \$x Anatomy
\$x Fetuses \$x Physiology
\$x Flight⁵ *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Fluorescence⁵ *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Food⁸ *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Fractures¹ *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Generative organs
\$x Genetic engineering *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Genetics
\$x Genome mapping *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Geographical distribution
\$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors *(May Subd Geog)*
\$x Germplasm resources *(May Subd Geog)*

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Germplasm resources \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Grooming⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Growth
\$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitat \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitat suitability index models (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Habitations¹⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Handling¹¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hibernation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Histology
\$x Histopathology
\$x Home range (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Homing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Host plants (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Air conditioning¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Decoration¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Design and construction¹²
\$x Housing \$x Disinfection¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Environmental engineering¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Heating and ventilation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Insulation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Lighting¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Odor control¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Safety measures¹²
\$x Housing \$x Sanitation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$v Specifications¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Waste disposal¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Identification
\$x Immunology
\$x Immunology \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Induced spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infections¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infertility (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Endocrinology
\$x Larvae \$x Food (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Larvae \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Locomotion (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marketing
\$x Marketing \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marking (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mercury content (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metabolism
\$x Metabolism \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Endocrine aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Genetic aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Molecular aspects⁵
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Migration \$x Endocrine aspects
\$x Molecular aspects
\$x Molecular genetics
\$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphology
\$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Names¹³
\$x Nervous system

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Nests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nests \$x Abandonment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nests \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Nomenclature¹⁴
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular)¹⁵
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular) \$x French, [Italian, etc.]¹⁵
- \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nutrition \$x Requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Odor (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Orientation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Origin
- \$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$v Identification
- \$x Parasites \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Parturition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pathogens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Pedigrees
- \$v Performance records
- \$x Photographic identification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Physiological genomics
- \$x Physiology
- \$x Population viability analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Predators of \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Predators of \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pregnancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Productivity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychological aspects¹⁶
- \$x Psychological testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychology¹⁷
- \$x Purchasing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

- \$x Racial analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radio tracking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recolonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction¹⁸
- \$x Reproduction \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of altitude on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Reproduction \$x Regulation
- \$x Respiration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Respiratory organs
- \$x Schooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sense organs
- \$x Services for (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexual behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speed
- \$x Spermatozoa
- \$x Spermatozoa \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spermatozoa \$x Morphology
- \$x Stranding (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Summering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Territoriality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Testing

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology¹⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Trypanotolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vaccination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom¹⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vertical distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Virus diseases¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Viruses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization \$x Regulation⁵
- \$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Weight
- \$x Wintering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Wounds and injuries¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, –**Abnormalities**, –**Fractures**; –**Infections**; –**Virus diseases**; –**Wounds and injuries**, may be further subdivided by subdivisions listed under the subdivision –**Diseases**, for example, –**Diseases–Diagnosis**; **Diseases–Treatment**.

²Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed. Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind.

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Subdivisions listed under –**Diseases** may also be used under subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, –**Infections–Diagnosis**; –**Fractures–Treatment**.

⁵Not established under **Fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

⁶Assign additional headings of the type [*individual chemical*]–**Physiological effect** for individual chemicals, drugs, insecticides, pesticides, etc.

⁷Use –**Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them. Use –**Food** for the nutritional substances that animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits.

Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS:

Use the following free-floating subdivisions under any literature or major genre of a literature for author groups that identify subordinate bodies of that literature. Any subdivision that also designates the literature is not valid under that literature, for example, use **English literature–Celtic authors**, but *not* **Celtic literature–Celtic authors**. Author group subdivisions may be followed by any topical or form subdivision from sec. III, but may not be combined in a single heading with period subdivisions from sec. I nor used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

Following this pattern, establish new subdivisions for internal *national*, *ethnic*, or *religious* groups *only*. For other author groups, follow the pattern of the phrase headings, **Children's writings, English–[place]** or **Prisoners' writings, French–[place]**. However, for external author groups, that is, those living outside the country normally associated with the literature to which they are contributing, use simple geographic subdivision, for example, **German literature–Romania**.

The literatures of the independent nations of Africa, Asia, and the Pacific must be established with the national or regional group as an independent literature (using a parenthetical language qualifier if necessary), for example, **African literature (French)**. Since these are no longer considered subordinate groups within the general body of literature in a language, do not formulate headings such as **French literature–African authors**.

- \$x Algerian authors
- \$x Arab authors
- \$x Armenian authors
- \$x Asian authors
- \$x Bangladeshi authors
- \$x Basque authors
- \$x Bengali authors
- \$x Black authors¹
- \$x Buddhist authors
- \$x Caribbean authors
- \$x Catalan authors
- \$x Catholic authors
- \$x Celtic authors
- \$x Chinese authors
- \$x Christian authors
- \$x Christian Science authors
- \$x Dalit authors
- \$x Dravidian authors

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Druze authors
- \$x European authors
- \$x Foreign authors
- \$x German authors
- \$x Greek authors
- \$x Hindu authors
- \$x Irish authors
- \$x Italian authors
- \$x Jaina authors
- \$x Japanese authors
- \$x Jewish authors
- \$x Jewish Christian authors
- \$x Korean authors
- \$x Kurdish authors
- \$x Kyrgyz authors
- \$x Lutheran authors
- \$x Luxembourg authors
- \$x Male authors
- \$x Maori authors
- \$x Maratha authors
- \$x Mennonite authors
- \$x Methodist authors
- \$x Minority authors
- \$x Mongolian authors
- \$x Mormon authors
- \$x Muslim authors
- \$x Orthodox Eastern authors
- \$x Parsee authors
- \$x Persian authors
- \$x Polish authors
- \$x Protestant authors
- \$x Puritan authors
- \$x Quaker authors
- \$x Scottish authors
- \$x Sindhi authors
- \$x South Asian authors
- \$x Swami-Narayani authors

Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: *(Continued)*

- \$x Turkish authors
- \$x Ukrainian authors
- \$x Welsh authors
- \$x White authors
- \$x Women authors
- \$x Yoruba authors

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS:

The following free-floating subdivisions may also be used under period subdivisions from sec. I, or author group subdivisions from sec. II with the noted exceptions. They may also be used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Adaptations
- \$x African influences²
- \$x American influences²
- \$x Appreciation *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Arab influences²
- \$x Asian influences²
- \$v Audio adaptations
- \$x Australian influences²
- \$v Bibliography
- \$x Brazilian influences²
- \$x Buddhist influences²
- \$x Celtic influences²
- \$x Censorship *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Chinese influences²
- \$x Christian influences²
- \$v Chronology
- \$x Classical influences²
- \$v Concordances
- \$x Confucian influences²
- \$x Criticism, Textual
- \$x Czech influences²

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

\$x Egyptian influences²
\$x English influences³
\$x European influences²
\$x Explication
\$v Film and video adaptations
\$x Finnish influences²
\$x First editions
\$x First editions \$v Bibliography
\$z Foreign countries⁴
\$z Foreign countries \$x History and criticism⁴
\$x Foreign influences²
\$x French influences²
\$x Galician influences²
\$x German influences²
\$x Greek influences²
\$x History and criticism
\$x History and criticism \$x Theory, etc.
\$x Hungarian influences²
\$v Illustrations
\$x Indian influences²
\$x Indic influences²
\$x Iranian influences²
\$x Irish influences²
\$x Islamic influences²
\$x Italian influences²
\$x Japanese influences²
\$x Latin American influences²
\$x Manuscripts
\$x Medieval influences
\$x Mediterranean influences²
\$x Memorizing
\$x Mexican influences²
\$x Minangkabau influences²
\$v Musical settings
\$x Musical settings \$x History and criticism
\$x Mycenaean influences²
\$x Old Norse influences²

Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Periodization
- \$x Persian influences²
- \$x Polish influences²
- \$x Portuguese influences²
- \$x Provençal influences²
- \$x Publishing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roman influences²
- \$x Romanian influences²
- \$x Russian influences²
- \$x Sanskrit influences²
- \$x Scandinavian influences²
- \$x Scottish influences²
- \$x Shamanistic influences
- \$x Slavic influences²
- \$x Slovak influences²
- \$x Sources
- \$x Soviet influences²
- \$x Spanish influences²
- \$v Stories, plots, etc.
- \$x Taoist influences²
- \$x Themes, motives
- \$v Translations
- \$x Translations \$x History and criticism
- \$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism
- \$x Turkic influences²
- \$x Ukrainian influences²
- \$x Urdu influences²
- \$x West Indian influences²
- \$x Western influences²
- \$x Yiddish influences²

NOTES

¹Not valid under headings for American literature or its genres.

²Not valid under period subdivisions or under headings for literatures identified in the subdivision.

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

³Not established under **English literature**. Use under other literatures as appropriate. Not valid under period subdivisions.

⁴Not valid under subdivisions for periods, groups of authors, or places.

Pattern Headings: Materials H 1158

PATTERNS: Concrete; Metals

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual materials and types of materials. *Examples:* **Dental materials; Foam rubber; Glass; Laminated metals; Plastics; Plywood; Porous materials.** Included are headings formed using the free-floating subdivision –**Materials** under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction, for example, **Telecommunication–Materials; Space vehicles–Materials; Nuclear reactors–Materials.** The category does not include the heading **Materials.** Some overlap exists with the category for chemicals (H 1149). Headings for individual substances and types of substances such as **Polyethylene** and **Nonferrous metals** should follow the pattern for materials when they are discussed as basic substances from which something can be made, including their engineering properties, processing, suitability for intended use, etc. They should follow the pattern for chemicals when discussed from the standpoint of their chemical structure, effects, reactions, etc.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Acoustic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Additives (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Air content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Air content \$x Measurement
- \$x Air content \$x Measurement \$x Instruments
- \$x Analysis
- \$x Anodic oxidation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biocompatibility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biodegradation (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1158 Pattern Headings: Materials

- \$x Brittleness (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carbon content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cavitation erosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical resistance
- \$x Cobalt content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cold working (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Coloring
- \$x Combustion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Compression testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Corrosion¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Corrosion fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cracking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Creep (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Curing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defects \$x Reporting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Density
- \$x Deoxidizing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Desulfurization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Deterioration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dewatering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dissolution
- \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ductility
- \$x Effect of high temperatures on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of lasers on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of low temperatures on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Elastic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embrittlement
- \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Environmental testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Erosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Etching (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Organs and Regions of the Body H 1164

- \$x Growth \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Growth \$x Regulation
- \$x Hemorrhage¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histochemistry
- \$x Histology
- \$x Histopathology
- \$x Hydatids¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hypertrophy¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Immunology
- \$x Infections¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Innervation
- \$x Interventional radiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Laser surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Laser surgery \$x Instruments
- \$x Lymphatics
- \$x Magnetic fields
- \$x Magnetic resonance imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Massage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mechanical properties
- \$x Metabolism
- \$x Metabolism \$x Disorders¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Metabolism \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Metabolism \$x Regulation
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Models (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Movements
- \$x Muscles²
- \$x Necrosis¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Needle biopsy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Paralysis¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pathophysiology
- \$x Pathophysiology \$x Animal models
- \$x Permeability³
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Physiology

H 1164 Pattern Headings: Organs and Regions of the Body

- \$x Precancerous conditions¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychophysiology
- \$x Radiation injuries¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography \$x Law and legislation⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography \$x Positioning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radionuclide imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reimplantation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reoperation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rupture¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Secretions
- \$x Sex differences (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sounds
- \$x Spectroscopic imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Complications¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Instruments
- \$x Surgery \$x Instruments \$x Sterilization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Patients⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Risk factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Syphilis¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Tomography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Traction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Complications¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Immunological aspects
- \$x Transplantation \$x Law and legislation⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Patients⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Organs and Regions of the Body H 1164

- \$x Tuberculosis¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Tumors¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ulcers¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ultrasonic imaging⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ultrastructure
- \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Weight
- \$x Wounds and injuries¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹See H 1150 for further subdivisions used under diseases.

²Not established under **Heart**. Use **Myocardium** for the muscular substance of the heart.

³Not established under **Heart** or **Foot**. Use under other organs and regions of the body as appropriate.

⁴See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁵See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

⁶Not established under **Heart**. Use under parts of the body other than **Brain** and **Heart**. For ultrasonic imaging of the brain, use **Ultrasonic encephalography**; for ultrasonic imaging of the heart, use **Echocardiography**.

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Drought tolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of acid deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of air pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of air pollution on \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Effect of aluminum sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of arsenic on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric carbon dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric nitrogen dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of cadmium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dichlorophenoxyacetic acid on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dredging on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ethephon on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of factory and trade waste on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ferrous sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fluorides on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fluorine on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of freezes on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of gamma rays on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of glyphosate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of grazing on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of greenhouse gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ice on (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Effect of iron on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of magnesium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of manganese on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of minerals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of oxygen on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pesticides on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of potassium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of soil acidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sulfates on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sulfur on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of thermal pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of trampling on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of trichloroethylene on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water levels on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water waves on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of wind on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryology
- \$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryos \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Equipment and supplies
- \$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fertilizers (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Field experiments
- \$x Flowering
- \$x Flowering time
- \$x Frost damage (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Frost protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Frost resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fumigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetics
- \$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Geographical distribution
- \$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Gift books
- \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grafting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Growth
- \$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hardiness (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting time (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heirloom varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Herbicide injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histochemistry
- \$x Husking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Identification
- \$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Inoculation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Irrigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Losses \$x Prevention
\$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marketing
\$x Mechanical properties
\$x Metabolism
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Micropropagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Milling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Molecular aspects
\$x Molecular genetics
\$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Morphology
\$x Mulching (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mutation breeding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Nomenclature
\$v Nomenclature (Popular)
\$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Origin
\$x Osmotic potential (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Packing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Palynotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Phenology
\$x Photomorphogenesis
\$x Phylogeny
\$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
\$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Physiology
\$x Planting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Planting time (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen \$x Morphology
\$x Pollen management (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population regeneration² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population viability analysis² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest losses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest losses \$x Prevention
- \$x Postharvest physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Precooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preharvest sprouting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Provenance trials (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Provenances (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pruning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiation preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction⁴
- \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Research \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Residues (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ripening (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots
- \$x Roots \$x Anatomy
- \$x Roots \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots \$x Physiology
- \$x Rootstocks (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Seedlings \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seedlings \$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seedlings \$x Evaluation
\$x Seedlings \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seedlings \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seedlings \$x Roots
\$x Seedlings, Bareroot
\$x Seedlings, Container
\$x Seeds (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Anatomy
\$x Seeds \$x Certification (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$v Identification
\$x Seeds \$x Marketing
\$x Seeds \$x Morphology
\$x Seeds \$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Physiology
\$x Seeds \$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seeds \$x Testing
\$x Seeds \$x Viability (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sensory evaluation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shelling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shelling \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Silage (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Soils (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Somatic embryogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sowing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spacing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Storage \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Storage \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Temperature (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Therapeutic use \$x Side effects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thinning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Threshing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Threshing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplanting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplanting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ultrastructure
- \$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Variation² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vegetative propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vitality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Weed control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Wounds and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Wounds and injuries \$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Yields (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety. Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind.

²Not established under **Corn**. Use under other plants as appropriate, for example, **Grasses–Conservation; Forest plants–Effect of browsing on; Aquatic plants–Effect of dredging on; Helophytes–Effect of water levels on; Aquatic plants–Population regeneration; Grasses–Population viability analysis; Grasses–Reintroduction; Trees–Seedlings–Effect of browsing on; Grasses–Variation.**

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind. Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety.

c. *Examples. (Continued)*

Title: Kunisada, an artist in the Kabuki theatre : an exhibition of the Japanese prints in the Antell Collection.

600 10 \$a Utagawa, Toyokuni, \$d 1786-1865
\$v Exhibitions.
650 #0 \$a Kabuki in art \$v Exhibitions.
600 10 \$a Antell, H. F. \$x Art collections
\$v Exhibitions.
650 #0 \$a Color prints \$x Private collections
\$z Finland \$z Helsinki \$v Exhibitions.

Title: Giacometti's Paris : lithographs.

600 10 \$a Giacometti, Alberto, \$d 1901-1966.
651 #0 \$a Paris (France) \$v In art.

Title: Clyde Connell : the art and life of a Louisiana woman.

600 10 \$a Connell, Clyde, \$d 1901-1998.
650 #0 \$a Sculptors \$z Louisiana \$v Biography.

Title: Paul Klee's paintings in the Phillips Collection : a catalog.

600 10 \$a Klee, Paul, \$d 1879-1940 \$v Catalogs.
650 #0 \$a Painting \$z Washington (D.C.) \$v Catalogs.
610 20 \$a Phillips Collection \$v Catalogs.

Title: Auguries of innocence.

[poetry by William Blake; wood engravings by Leonard Baskin]
[no subject]

Title: Eight aquatints by Shirley Jones illustrating eight passages from Beowulf.

[main entry under Jones]

600 10 \$a Jones, Shirley.
630 00 \$a Beowulf \$v Illustrations.

H 1250 Art and Fine Art

3. *Single art works.*

a. Rules for assignment of headings. Assign the name of the art work as the first subject heading to works about a single art work. Assign as additional headings the same types of headings that would be assigned to works about art by a single artist. Assign headings for location and ownership only when this information is easily found in the work being cataloged. Do not do research in other sources specifically to determine location or ownership.

b. Examples.

Title: Ernst, Pietà or revolution by night.

600 10 \$a Ernst, Max, \$d 1891-1976. \$t Pietà.
650 #0 \$a Surrealism \$z Germany.
650 #0 \$a Painting \$z England \$z London.
610 20 \$a Tate Gallery.

Title: The Venus de Milo.

630 00 \$a Venus de Milo.
650 #0 \$a Aphrodite (Greek deity) \$x Art.
650 #0 \$a Marble sculpture \$z France \$z Paris.
610 20 \$a Musée du Louvre.

BACKGROUND: Battles may be part of particular wars or individual military engagements. Most individual battles take their name from the place in which they were fought. Others are named for persons, buildings, etc. Individual battles are established in English as event headings, using the name of the battle as found in standard reference sources. Prior to 2002, headings for battles that were based on place names were established in various forms: some without geographical qualifiers, some with place names in AACR1 form and some with AACR2 parenthetical qualifiers. A uniform practice for these headings was adopted in February 2002. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning subject headings for individual battles. It does not apply to other types of individual military engagements such as bombardments, raids, sieges, etc. For instructions on establishing headings for individual bombardments and sieges, see the Background statement in H 1560. As used in this instruction sheet, the term **battle** refers to aerial, land, or naval operations.

1. Form of heading. Establish the heading for the battle (or for several battles known by a collective name) as an event heading, using the form of the name found in the sources consulted. If the name in natural-language form appears as **Battle of [. . .]** (or **Battles of [. . .]**), use an inverted form to bring the substantive portion of the name into the initial position. Add the appropriate jurisdictional geographic qualifier and date in accordance with the normal practice for events as given in H 1592, sec.4.b. and sec.4.c. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a York, Battle of, Toronto, Ont., 1813
 150 ## \$a Moscow, Battle of, Moscow, Russia, 1941-1942
 150 ## \$a Little Bighorn, Battle of the, Mont., 1876
 150 ## \$a Belly River, Battle of, Alta., 1870
 150 ## \$a Reynolds Battle, Mont., 1876
 150 ## \$a Seven Days' Battles, Va., 1862

The conventional geographic name in the name of the battle may differ in spelling or diacritics from the form of name in the geographic qualifier. *Example:*

150 ## \$a Dong Ha, Battle of, Đông Hà, Vietnam, 1972

If the battle is normally known by a sequential number because more than one battle occurred in the place during a single war, add the number to the heading before the term **Battle**. *Example:*

150 ## \$a Marne, 2nd Battle of the, France, 1918

H 1285 Battles

1. Form of heading. (Continued)

If the battle(s) took place in the open sea or in more than one country omit the geographic qualifier.

Examples:

150 ## \$a Coral Sea, Battle of the, 1942
150 ## \$a Isonzo, Battles of the, 1915-1917

2. References.

a. UF references. Add 4XX fields for other names or for alternate ways of formulating the name of the battle, if any. Do not add a 450 field in the form **Battle of [. . .]**. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a York, Battle of, Toronto, Ont., 1813
451 ## \$a Toronto (Ont.) \$x History \$x Capture, 1813

150 ## \$a North Anna River, Battle of, Va., 1864
450 ## \$a Hanover Junction, Battle of, Va., 1864
450 ## \$a Jericho Bridge, Battle of, Va., 1864
450 ## \$a Jericho Ford, Battle of, Va., 1864
450 ## \$a Jericho Mills, Battle of, Va., 1864
450 ## \$a Taylor's Bridge, Battle of, Va., 1864

b. Broader terms.

(1) Battles as events in wars. Add the 550 (broader term) field [*name of war*]-**Campaigns**-[*country or first order political division*] for a battle that is part of a war that has been both established under its own name and fought in more than one jurisdiction. *Example:*

150 ## \$a Moscow, Battle of, Moscow, Russia, 1941-1942
550 ## \$w g \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$x Campaigns
\$z Russia (Federation)

2. References.

b. Broader terms.

(1) *Battles as events in wars.* (Continued)

Add the 551 (broader term) field **[place]–History–[name of war]–Campaigns** and, if appropriate, **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** for a battle that is part of a war established under **[place]–History**. Do not further subdivide **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** by **–Campaigns**. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Franklin, Battle of, Franklin, Tenn., 1864
551 ## $w g $a Tennessee $x History $y Civil War,
      1861-1865
551 ## $w g $a United States $x History $y Civil
      War, 1861-1865 $x Campaigns
```

In cases where a heading has been established for a specific campaign, for example, **Johnsonville Campaign, New Johnsonville, Tenn., 1864**, do not use the heading as a broader term for the individual battles that were part of the campaign.

(2) *Battles not identified with wars.* Add the 551 (broader term) field **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** for a battle that is not part of a war. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Hastings, Battle of, England, 1066
551 ## $w g $a Great Britain $x History
      $y William I, 1066-1087
```

(3) *American Indian battles.* Add the 550 (broader term) field **[name of Indian tribe]–Wars, [date]** and, if appropriate, **[place]–History** or **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** for an Indian battle that is part of a particular Indian war. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Dull Knife Battle, Wyo., 1876
550 ## $w g $a Cheyenne Indians $x Wars, 1876
551 ## $w g $a Wyoming $x History
```

H 1285 Battles

2. References.

b. Broader terms.

(3) *American Indian battles.* (Continued)

Add the 550 (broader term) field **Indians of [. . .]–Wars–[country or first order political division]** and, if appropriate, the 551 (broader term) field **[place]–History** or **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** for an Indian battle that is not part of a particular Indian war. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Adobe Walls, Battle of, Tex., 1874
550 ## $w g $a Indians of North America $x Wars
      $z Texas
551 ## $w g $a Texas $x History $y 1846-1950
```

3. Assignment of headings.

a. *General works on individual battles.* Assign the heading for the battle, adding a form subdivision, if appropriate. Do not assign a heading for **[name of war]–Campaigns–[place]** or for **[place]–History–[name of war]–Campaigns** since this aspect is covered by the reference structure for individual battles.

b. *Special topics.*

(1) *Topical subdivisions not used under individual battles.* Do not use topical subdivisions under names of individual battles. For works on a special topic pertaining to a battle that is part of a war, assign as an additional heading the name of the war at its broadest level subdivided by the appropriate topical subdivision in accordance with H 1200.

(2) *Persons, topics, time periods, localities.* Assign additional headings, if necessary, to bring out individual persons, special topics, time periods, or local history.

3. *Assignment of headings.*

Examples:

Title: Hospital scenes after the Battle of Gettysburg, July 1863.

650 #0 \$a Gettysburg, Battle of, Gettysburg, Pa., 1863.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil War, 1861-1865
\$x Hospitals.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil War, 1861-1865
\$x Medical care.
650 #0 \$a Hospitals \$z Pennsylvania \$ z Gettysburg Region
\$x History \$y 19th century.

Title: Peleliu, 1944 : the 81st Infantry Division in battle.

650 #0 \$a Peleliu, Battle of, Palau, 1944.
650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$x Regimental histories
\$z United States.
610 10 \$a United States. \$b Army. \$b Infantry Division, 81st
\$x History.

Title: Artillery hell : the employment of artillery at Antietam.

650 #0 \$a Antietam, Battle of, Md., 1862.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil War, 1861-1865
\$x Artillery operations.

Title: Sole survivor : the Battle of Midway and its effect on his life.

650 #0 \$a Midway, Battle of, 1942 \$v Personal narratives,
American.
600 10 \$a Gay, George H., \$d 1917-
610 10 \$a United States. \$b Navy. \$b Torpedo Squadron 8
\$v Biography.
650 #0 \$a Sailors \$z United States \$v Biography.

H 1285 Battles

3. Assignment of headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Negro soldiers, free men of color in the Battle of New Orleans, War of 1812.

650 #0 \$a New Orleans, Battle of, New Orleans, La., 1815.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y War of 1812
 \$x Participation, African American.
650 #0 \$a African Americans \$z Louisiana \$z New Orleans
 \$x History \$y 19th century.
651 #0 \$a Louisiana \$x History \$y War of 1812
 \$x Participation, African American.
650 #0 \$a New Orleans, Battle of, New Orleans, La., 1815
 \$v Registers.
651 #0 \$a New Orleans (La.) \$x History.
651 #0 \$a New Orleans (La.) \$v Genealogy.

3. Examples.

Title: The translation debate : what makes a Bible translation good?

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Translating.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions.

Title: A Bibliography of scriptures in African languages.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions, African \$v Bibliography.

Title: Catholic German Bibles from the Reformation until today.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions, Catholic \$x History.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$l German \$x Versions \$x History.

Title: About the New English Bible.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$l English \$x Versions \$x New English.

Title: The Targums of Onkelos and Jonathan ben Uzziel on the Pentateuch. 1968.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Pentateuch. \$l Aramaic.

\$s Onkelos \$v Translations into English.

Biography H 1330

BACKGROUND: A work about an individual person may be either biographical, critical, or both. Biographical works focus on the personal aspects of the individual's life, critical works on the individual's professional, intellectual, or artistic achievements. The provisions in this instruction sheet do not apply to works that are predominantly critical, only to works that are predominantly biographical and in narrative form. For provisions dealing with other forms of material that are sometimes biographical in nature, such as correspondence, diaries, and interviews, see the appropriate specific instruction sheet, for example, H 1480, H 1538, H 1678. For classification of biography, see F 275 (General); F 605, sec. 1 (Government officials); and F 632 (Literary authors writing in more than one language).

DEFINITIONS: The following definitions apply for purposes of this instruction sheet:

Biography (including *Autobiography*): A narrative work more than 50% of which recounts the personal aspects of the life of one or more individuals. (In the case of historical figures, particularly those from the distant past, where little is known of the personal details of their lives, the limitation of the definition to "personal aspects" does not apply.) **Personal aspects** include such details as the individual's early years, education, marriage and other personal relationships, personal habits and personality, family life, travels, personal experiences and tragedies, last years and death, etc. **Life** means a relatively large portion of the individual's life, not just a single brief incident.

Collective biography: A biography of two or more individuals.

Individual biography: A biography of one person.

Partial biography: A work that includes some, but less than 50%, biographical material.

1. General rule. Assign an appropriate combination of the following types of headings to a biography:

- the name heading(s) for the person(s) [*no more than four*]
- if appropriate, a "class of persons" heading with the free-floating form subdivision **-Biography**
- if appropriate, heading(s) to bring out the person's association with a place or organization, or involvement with a specific event
- topical headings, as appropriate for the work

Each of these headings is discussed specifically in sections 1.a.-1.d., below.

H 1330 Biography

1. General rule. (Continued)

a. Name heading for the person. Assign the heading as established in AACR2 form in the name authority file. Do not subdivide the name by **–Biography**.

Exception: --Biography has been established and may be used under the names of four individuals: Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616; Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632; Jesus Christ; and Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint. Do not submit a proposal to establish --Biography under the name of any other individual.

If the biography focuses on a specific aspect of the person's life subdivide the name heading using the appropriate topical subdivision from H 1110, for example, **–Childhood and youth**, **–Health**, **–Death and burial**. Assign this heading as the first heading.

Literary authors. For literary authors who write under various names and have more than one name heading, use the heading that serves as the "base heading" for the author, that is, the heading having the complete set of references for the author. Free-floating use of the subdivision **–Biography** after headings for individual literary authors was discontinued in 1998. The subdivision is established under **Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616**, and continues to be used under that heading as an exceptional practice.

Official name heading vs. personal name heading. For individuals who have both an official name heading and a personal name heading, use the personal name heading. For example, use **Reagan, Ronald** rather than **United States. President (1981-1989 : Reagan)**.

Collective biography. If the work is about two, three, or four persons, assign the name heading for each. If the work is about more than four persons, omit the name headings.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. This heading designates the group of people to which the biographee belongs, as discussed in the work being cataloged, for example, **Musicians**, **Heads of state**, **Football coaches**, **Italy–Kings and rulers**, etc.

Note: This heading is assigned to individual biographies primarily for the benefit of public library users who are seeking biographies of a particular type of person rather than a particular individual. The heading should be selected with that in mind. If the biographee belongs to no discernable class of persons of the type judged likely to be sought by the typical public library user, it may be omitted.

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

BACKGROUND: This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning names of buildings and other structures as subject headings. The following types of entities are covered by these guidelines:

Bridges
Buildings and building complexes (castles, houses, city halls, etc.)
Building details (windows, doors, domes, rooms)
Fortresses
Gates
Monuments
Plazas
Tunnels
Walls

1. Existing headings. If an established heading for a structure is needed for cataloging new material and it does not conform to the guidelines in this instruction sheet, change it as necessary. Follow the procedures in H 193.

2. Form of entry.

a. Model:

```
1XX X# $a [name of structure] ([geographic qualifier])
4XX X# $a [alternate name(s)] ([geographic
qualifier])
550 ## $w g $a [type of structure] $z [country, or first
order division]
```

Do not add a broader term of the type [*name of city*]-**Buildings, structures, etc.**; instead, assign a heading of that type to the work being cataloged, as described in sec. 7, below.

b. Tagging. Consult the list of Group 2 headings in H 405 for the appropriate MARC tag to use for the type of structure proposed.

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

2. *Form of entry.* (Continued)

c. Entry term. Enter the heading for a particular building or structure directly under its own name, in uninverted form, and qualify it by the name of the geographic entity in which the structure is located. Also enter structures in cities directly under name rather than under the name of the city. For a building known by its street address rather than a name, use the address, for example, **Number 10 Downing Street (London, England)**. For building details, see sec. 5, below.

Do not formulate a heading for a named structure that consists solely of a generic term with a geographic qualifier unless there is evidence that this is also the *proper* name of the structure.

d. Language.

(1) *Post-1500 entities.* Establish the name of a structure built after 1500 in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

(2) *Pre-1500 entities.* If the name of a structure of pre-1500 origin has become firmly established in an English form in English language usage, establish it in this English form. Determine this by consulting those English language reference sources that are readily available.

Do not treat informal generic references to the structure (such as "a castle in [...]"), as justification for establishing its name in English. If no firmly established English form exists, establish the name in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

(3) *Provisional headings.* If, according to the above rules, the vernacular form is required but cannot be found either in the work being cataloged or in readily available reference sources, use the form found in the work being cataloged. In a 670 field, provide a brief explanation, such as **Established in English; vernacular form not found**. Add a 952 field with the word **Provisional**. When preparing the record to be assigned to a weekly list, the Subject Headings Editorial team will code for "Provisional" in field 008/33 (the **Level of Establishment** box on the 008 input screen for authority records in the LC ILS). If, when cataloging a subsequent work for which the heading is required, the vernacular form is found, submit a proposal to change the established heading to the proper form and to remove the "provisional" coding, changing it to "fully established" (code **a** in field 008/33).

Commentaries on Individual Works H 1435

2. Companion headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Original work: *Berkeley, George, 1685-1753. A treatise concerning the principles of human knowledge.*
650 #0 \$a Knowledge, Theory of \$v Early works to 1800.
650 #0 \$a Idealism \$v Early works to 1800.

Commentary: *Luce, A. A. (Arthur Aston), 1882- Berkeley's immaterialism : a commentary on his A treatise concerning the principles of human knowledge.*
600 10 \$a Berkeley, George, \$d 1685-1753. \$t Treatise concerning the principles of human knowledge.
650 #0 \$a Knowledge, Theory of.
650 #0 \$a Idealism.

Textual criticism. Do not assign such headings if the commentary does not discuss the substantive matter of the original work, but is only textual criticism. Instead, assign additional headings if needed to bring out the nature or focus of the commentary. *Example:*

Original work: *Aristotle. [Nicomachean ethics. English] The Nicomachean ethics.*
650 #0 \$a Ethics \$v Early works to 1800.

Commentary: *Bywater, Ingram, 1840-1914. Contributions to the textual criticism of Aristotle's Nicomachean ethics.*
600 00 \$a Aristotle. \$t Nicomachean ethics.

H 1435 Commentaries on Individual Works

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES:

2. Companion headings. (Continued)

Conversion of form headings to topical headings. If the headings assigned to the original work are used only as form headings, convert them to their most appropriate topical equivalents when assigning them as headings to a commentary on the work. *Examples:*

Form heading: 651 #0 \$a Egypt \$x History \$v Fiction.

Topical equivalent: 651 #0 \$a Egypt \$x In literature.

Form heading: 650 #0 \$a Merlin (Legendary character)
\$v Legends.

Topical equivalent: 650 #0 \$a Merlin (Legendary character)
\$x Legends \$x History and
criticism.

Form heading: 651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil
War, 1861-1865 \$v Fiction.

Topical equivalent: 651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil
War, 1861-1865 \$x Literature and
the war.

Form heading: 650 #0 \$a Agriculture \$v Periodicals.

Topical equivalent: 650 #0 \$a Agriculture \$x Periodicals
\$x History.

3. Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary.

a. If entered under author of original work. Assign headings, if any, appropriate to the text of the original work. If the commentary is 20% or more of the work being cataloged, assign also the name-title or uniform title heading appropriate to a commentary on the work.

b. If entered under the author of the commentary. Assign the name-title or uniform title heading appropriate to a commentary on the work, and any other headings appropriate to the text of the original work.

4. Event headings in phrase form. (Continued)

Examples:

150 ## \$a Baneberry Nuclear Test, Nev., 1970
 550 ## \$w g \$a Nuclear weapons \$z Nevada \$x Testing
 550 ## \$w g \$a Underground nuclear explosions \$z Nevada

150 ## \$a Bear River Massacre, Idaho, 1863
 450 ## \$a Bia Ogoi Massacre, Idaho, 1863
 550 ## \$w g \$a Massacres \$z Idaho
 550 ## \$w g \$a Shoshoni Indians \$x Wars, 1863-1865

150 ## \$a Bhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984
 450 ## \$a Bhopal Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984
 450 ## \$a Bhopal Poisonous Gas Disaster, Bhopal, India,
 1984
 450 ## \$a Union Carbide Bhopal Disaster, Bhopal, India,
 1984
 550 ## \$w g \$a Pesticides industry \$x Accidents \$z India

150 ## \$a Black Hole Incident, Calcutta, India, 1756
 450 ## \$a Black Hole of Calcutta Incident, Calcutta,
 India, 1756
 551 ## \$w g \$a Calcutta (India) \$x History

150 ## \$a Hurricane Flora, 1963
 450 ## \$a Ciclón Flora, 1963
 450 ## \$a Flora, Hurricane, 1963
 450 ## \$a Huracán Flora, 1963
 550 ## \$w g \$a Hurricanes

150 ## \$a TWA Flight 847 Hijacking Incident, 1985
 450 ## \$a Beirut Hostage Crisis, Beirut, Lebanon, 1985
 450 ## \$a Hijacking of TWA Flight 847, 1985
 450 ## \$a Hostage Crisis, Beirut, Lebanon, 1985
 450 ## \$a Trans World Airlines Flight 847 Hijacking
 Incident, 1985
 450 ## \$a TWA Hijacking Incident, 1985
 450 ## \$a TWA Hostage Crisis, 1985
 550 ## \$w g \$a Hijacking of aircraft

H 1592 Events

5. Event headings as subdivisions. Although most event headings are established in phrase form, certain types of events are formulated as subdivisions under a main heading. This occurs most frequently (a) when a single person or corporate body is the principal participant in, or focus of, the event, in which case the heading is formulated as:

100 (or 110) ## \$a [name of person or corporate body] \$x [name of event], [date]

or (b) when the event represents a momentous occurrence in the history of a place, in which case the heading is formulated as:

151 ## \$a [name of place] \$x History \$y [name of event], [date]

Note: Subdivisions with dates used under names of persons or corporate bodies are treated as topical subdivisions qualified by date and are subfield coded \$x. Subdivisions of the type –History–[event], [date] are treated as chronological subdivisions subfield coded \$y (cf. H 620, sec. 1.e.(1)).

a. Persons. Formulate headings for specific named events focused entirely on an individual person as follows:

100 X# [name of person] \$x [name of event], [date]

Use either standard free-floating subdivisions listed in H 1110, *Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons*, or in the case of unusually significant persons, such as founders of religions, establish unique subdivisions under the person's name. Use dates whenever they can be determined, both with free-floating subdivisions where they are authorized, and with new subdivisions established specifically under particular persons (see H 1078 for guidelines on formulating the date element). Do not change existing subdivisions established under specific individuals without dates. Do not add dates to free-floating subdivisions where they are not authorized.

Examples:

100 1# \$a Reagan, Ronald \$x Assassination attempt, 1981
100 1# \$a Perón, Juan Domingo, \$d 1895-1974 \$x Inauguration,
1973
100 0# \$a Muhammad, \$c Prophet, \$d d. 632 \$x Farewell
pilgrimage
100 1# \$a Begin, Menachem, \$d 1913-1992 \$x Imprisonment

Fictitious Characters H 1610

BACKGROUND: *Fictitious characters may have names that resemble personal names or they may have names that are descriptive phrases or nicknames. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning subject headings for fictitious characters. For more specific instructions on comic and cartoon characters see H 1430; for legendary characters see H 1795.*

1. Form of heading.

a. Characters with surnames. Establish in inverted form all characters whose names include a surname. Add as a final element of the name any titles of address associated with the name, if appropriate. Add the parenthetical qualifier (**Fictitious character**).

Examples:

```
150 ## $a Shore, Jemima (Fictitious character)
150 ## $a Wimsey, Peter, Lord (Fictitious character)
150 ## $a Collins, Mr. (Fictitious character)
150 ## $a Dolittle, Doctor (Fictitious character)
```

b. Characters with nicknames. Establish a character known by nickname directly under that name. Add the parenthetical qualifier (**Fictitious character**). *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Operator 5 (Fictitious character)
150 ## $a Little Orphan Annie (Fictitious character)
```

c. Characters with titles or terms of address. Include or exclude terms such as **Inspector**, **Captain**, **Sergeant**, etc., based on usage by the literary author in the works in which the character appears.

d. Characters with the same names or non-distinct names. Differentiate characters having the same names by adding the creator's name to the qualifier following a space, a colon, and another space. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Yum Yum (Fictitious character : Braun)
150 ## $a Yum Yum (Fictitious character : Gilbert)
```

H 1610 Fictitious Characters

1. Form of heading.

d. Characters with the same names or non-distinct names. (Continued)

If a character's name consists only of a forename with no other distinguishing term, add the creator's name to the qualifier in order to construct a unique heading. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Alfie (Fictitious character : Hughes)
150 ## $a Jim (Fictitious character : Cunliffe)
```

e. Characters with names that differ according to the language of the work. Establish characters that have different names in English and foreign-language editions, or that have different names in various literary traditions, under the name used in English, regardless of the original language of the works. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Thomas the Tank Engine (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Tomos y Tanc (Fictitious character)

150 ## $a Othello (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Otello (Fictitious character)
```

2. References.

a. UF references. Add 450 fields with other names by which the character may be known, including uninverted forms for characters entered under surname. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Shadow (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Cranston, Lamont (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Lamont Cranston (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a The Shadow (Fictitious character)

150 ## $a Marple, Jane (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Jane Marple (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Marple, Miss (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Miss Marple (Fictitious character)

150 ## $a March, Jo (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Bhaer, Jo (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Jo Bhaer (Fictitious character)
450 ## $a Jo March (Fictitious character)
```

b. Broader terms. Do not add a broader term for headings for fictitious characters.

Fictitious Characters H 1610

3. *Geographic subdivision.* Do not divide headings for fictitious characters by place.

4. *Named groups of characters.* Establish named groups of fictitious characters according to the same pattern as individual characters. Use as a qualifier the term (**Fictitious characters**).
Examples:

```
150 ## $a Hardy Boys (Fictitious characters)
150 ## $a Sartoris family (Fictitious characters)
```

Add 450 fields with references from variant names by which the group is known. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Cartwright family (Fictitious characters)
450 ## $a Cartwright clan (Fictitious characters)
450 ## $a Cartwrights (Fictitious characters)
```

Do not establish individual characters, including married couples, who appear together in a fictional work, as a group. Instead, establish them as separate characters. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a North, Jerry (Fictitious character)
150 ## $a North, Pam (Fictitious character)
```

[*not* 150 ## \$a North, Mr. and Mrs. (Fictitious characters)]

5. *Assignment of headings.*

a. Literary texts. Assign a heading for a fictitious character to collections of literary texts featuring the character, using the subdivisions **–Fiction**, **–Drama**, **–Poetry**, or **–Literary collections** as appropriate.

For individual plays or poems assign a heading only if the character has been borrowed by the author from another author or source and used in the creation of a new work. Do not assign a heading for works that are simply adaptations of another author's work.

LC practice:

Do not assign a heading for a fictitious character to an individual work of fiction, except for records that are cataloged according to special provisions for increased access to fiction (see H 1790).

H 1610 Fictitious Characters

5. *Assignment of headings.* (Continued)

b. Works about the character. Assign a heading without further subdivision to general works on a fictitious character.

For works limited to specific media, use the heading with an appropriate qualifying phrase such as ... **in art**, ... **in literature**, ... **in mass media**.

Exception: Do not use ... **in literature** for literary characters. Use the phrase ... **in literature** only for characters borrowed from other media, for example, **Snoopy (Fictitious character) in literature**.

For works on the use of a fictitious character by an individual author, assign also a heading of the type [*name of author*]-**Characters**-[*name of character*] (cf. H 1110).

Government Policy H 1642

BACKGROUND: It had formerly been the practice to use phrase headings of the type [...] **policy** (for example, **Urban policy**, **Housing policy**) or of the type [...] **and state** (for example, **Education and state**, **Theater and state**) to designate government policy on the topic in question. In 1980, the subdivision –**Government policy** (May Subd Geog) was made a free-floating subdivision to be used in lieu of establishing phrase headings of this type. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivision –**Government policy** (May Subd Geog) under topical headings and under headings for classes of persons or ethnic groups for works describing the course of action selected by national, state, or local governments to guide decision making and programs pertaining to the topic, class of persons, or ethnic group.

1. Use of the free-floating subdivision. Use the subdivision –**Government policy** (May Subd Geog) as described above under any heading for which a corresponding phrase heading has not already been established. *Examples:*

Title: Final report, the 1981 White House Conference on Aging.

650 #0 \$a Older people \$x Government policy \$z United States \$v Congresses.

Title: Overview of state policies related to adolescent parenthood.

650 #0 \$a Adolescent parents \$x Government policy \$z United States \$x States.

Exception: Do not use –**Government policy** under headings designating activities that are inherently governmental in nature, for example, **City planning**; **Finance, Public**; **Crime prevention**.

2. Use of existing phrase headings. Continue to use existing headings that have been established in the form [...] **policy** or [...] **and state**. Do not, however, propose new headings of this type.

3. Free-floating subdivisions for specific types of policy. Some phrase headings for policy are not authorized for geographic subdivision because corresponding subdivisions are used under names of places, for example, –**Cultural policy**, –**Economic policy**, –**Military policy**, –**Population policy**, –**Social policy**. See H 1140 for the complete list of free-floating subdivisions used under names of places.

History H 1647

BACKGROUND: *The subdivision –History may be used under most headings to designate a historical treatment of the topic in question. There are, however, certain restrictions on its use. These restrictions are described in this instruction sheet.*

1. General rule. Except as noted below, use the free-floating subdivision –**History** under topical headings, classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, names of places, including jurisdictions that no longer exist, and corporate bodies, for descriptions and explanations of past events concerning the topic, group, sacred work, place, or organization. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Aeronautics $x History.
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $x History.
630 00 $a Koran $x History.
651 #0 $a Washington (D.C.) $x History.
651 #0 $a Holy Roman Empire $x History.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x History.
610 20 $a General Motors Corporation $x History.
```

Do not use –**History** under:

- headings or subdivisions that denote history, that have an obvious historical connotation, or that have been treated as inherently historical

For a discussion of these headings and subdivisions, see sec. 3.

- literary, music, film, television program, and video recording form headings

Instead use –**History and criticism**, for example, **English poetry– History and criticism; Dance music–History and criticism; Western films–History and criticism; Animated television programs–History and criticism; Comedy videos–History and criticism** For subdivisions used under literatures and literary genres, see H 1156. For subdivisions used under musical compositions, see H 1160.

- art genre headings qualified by names of national, ethnic, or religious groups

See H 1250, sec. 1.

H 1647 History

1. *General rule.* (Continued)

Do not use **–History** under:

- name-title headings or under uniform titles other than sacred works

Assign such headings without subdivision to historical treatments of particular works. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under author, see H 1155.6. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under title, see H 1155.8.

- names of individual persons or families, including dynasties and royal houses

For subdivisions used under names of individual persons, see H 1110. For subdivisions used under names of families, see H 1120. For instructions on biographical works, see H 1330. For instructions on genealogy, see H 1631. For instructions on dynasties, royal houses, etc., see H 1574.

2. *Chronological subdivisions.*

a. Established chronological subdivisions. Use **–History** further subdivided by chronological subdivisions for specific time periods where they are established under headings for topics and places. *Examples:*

651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$y Civil War, 1861-1865.
651 #0 \$a Japan \$x History \$y Heian period, 794-1185.
650 #0 \$a Theater \$x History \$y To 500.

b. Free-floating chronological subdivisions. Historical periods may also be brought out by headings of the type **[topic]–History–To 1500** or **[topic]–History–16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, or 21st] century**. Assign these free-floating **–History–[. . .] century** subdivisions whenever it is possible to do so, that is, when there is no contrary provision in the subject authority file. Also assign, on a free-floating basis, headings of the type **[place or corporate body]–[topic]–History–16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, or 21st] century** so long as the topical subdivision is not one of those listed in sec. 9, and no contrary provision exists in the subject authority file.

Interviews H 1678

BACKGROUND: *The free-floating subdivision –Interviews is one of the several specific form subdivisions that designate biographical material. It is used as a free-floating subdivision under headings for classes of persons, ethnic groups, names of individual corporate bodies, and names of individual persons, including literary authors, for transcripts of what was said during the course of interviews or conversations with one or more persons on one or more occasions.*

1. The heading Interviews. Assign the heading **Interviews** (*May Subd Geog*) to general collections of interviews with persons from a wide variety of groups or with undesignated backgrounds. *Example:*

Title: Talks with prominent Americans.
650 #0 \$a Interviews \$z United States.

2. The subdivision –Interviews. Assign a heading or headings of the type [*class of persons*]–**Interviews** or [*ethnic group*]–**Interviews** to works consisting of interviews with one or more persons from specific fields or ethnic groups. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a African Americans \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Children of divorced parents \$z United States
 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Scientists \$z Hungary \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Terminally ill \$z Sweden \$v Interviews.
610 10 \$a United States. \$b Navy \$x Surgeons \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Women mountaineers \$z Europe \$v Interviews.

Exception: If the heading representing the special class of persons does not exist and it is not possible to establish such a heading, use **–Interviews** under the heading for the appropriate field or discipline. In such situations the subdivision is not free-floating and must be established. An example of a work requiring such treatment would be a collection of interviews with several persons involved in the field of dance, including dancers, choreographers, impresarios, composers, costume designers, patrons, etc.

Also use the subdivision **–Interviews** under names of individual corporate bodies, including performing groups, for collections of interviews with persons associated with the corporate body, for example, **Minnesota Vikings (Football team)–Interviews**; **Guarneri Quartet–Interviews**. Use more specific subdivisions representing classes of persons, for example, **–Employees** or **–Presidents**, under the corporate body heading, if appropriate.

H 1678 Interviews

3. *Individual persons.* Use the free-floating subdivision –**Interviews** under names of individual persons, including literary authors, for works consisting of interviews with them. *Examples:*

Title: Entretiens avec Marcel Duchamp.

600 10 \$a Duchamp, Marcel, \$d 1887-1968 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Artists \$z France \$v Interviews.

Title: Borges at eighty : conversations.

600 10 \$a Borges, Jorge Luis, \$d 1899-1986 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Authors, Argentine \$y 20th century \$v Interviews.

4. *Assigning additional headings.* Assign additional appropriate headings as needed to bring out the focus of the interviews or specific topics discussed. Do not further subdivide these headings by –**Interviews**. *Examples:*

Title: Soviet leaders face American journalists.

651 #0 \$a Soviet Union \$x Foreign relations \$y 1953-1975.
651 #0 \$a Soviet Union \$x Foreign relations \$z United
States.
651 #0 \$a United States \$x Foreign relations \$z Soviet
Union.
650 #0 \$a Statesmen \$z Soviet Union \$v Interviews.

Title: Ici et maintenant : conversations avec...

600 10 \$a Mitterrand, François, \$d 1916-1996 \$v Interviews.
650 #0 \$a Statesmen \$z France \$v Interviews.
651 #0 \$a France \$x Politics and government \$y 1974-1981.

Literature: Fiction H 1790

LC practice: Sec. 4, below, describes standard practice followed at the Library of Congress. For an alternative approach to individual works of fiction, see the section SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION at the end of this instruction sheet.

4. Individual works of fiction. Bring out topic(s) only for the following types of individual works of fiction:

a. Biographical fiction. Assign the heading [*name of biographee*]-**Fiction**.

b. Historical fiction. Assign headings for specific historical events, periods, etc., with the subdivision -**Fiction**, e.g. **World War, 1939-1945-Fiction**; **San Francisco Earthquake, Calif., 1906-Fiction**.

Do not assign a heading of this type when the event or period is merely the backdrop to a story. Assign it only when the event or period is the principal focus of the work.

Interpret the term **historical fiction** broadly to include works about entities such as movements, corporate bodies other than jurisdictions, camps, parks, structures, geographical features other than regions, ethnic groups, disasters, categories of events, etc.

c. Animal stories. Assign the heading **Animals-Fiction** to individual novels or stories about animals in general. For a work about a specific type of animal, assign a heading for the type of animal with the subdivision -**Fiction**, e.g. **Horses-Fiction**.

Assign no form headings to individual works of adult fiction, children's fiction, or young adult fiction.

5. Limitations on assigning headings. Assign topical and form headings, especially to single works of fiction or to collections by one author, only as they come readily to mind after a superficial review of the work being cataloged.

Do not attempt to assign a form heading to a collection of fiction by one author if the form is not stated on the title page or in another prominent location.

Do not attempt to discern topics which have not been made explicit by the author or publisher, or which could be interpreted as representing value judgments.

H 1790 Literature: Fiction

6. *History and criticism.*

a. General rule. For works about particular themes in fiction, assign as many headings as necessary to bring out the form (with subdivision –**History and criticism**) and the topic(s) (normally using headings of the type **[topic] in literature**). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a American fiction $y 20th century $x History and
        criticism.
650 #0 $a Politics in literature.
```

If a heading has both form and topical aspects, assign only the single heading with the subdivision –**History and criticism**, e.g. **Detective and mystery stories, American –History and criticism**.

b. Fiction about individual persons or families. For criticism of fiction about particular individuals or families, including dynasties and royal houses, assign the name of the person or family with the free-floating subdivision –**In literature**, e.g. **Faust, d. ca. 1540–In literature; Mann family–In literature**.

c. Fiction about imaginary persons. For criticism of fiction about particular imaginary individuals, assign the name of the person. Also assign if appropriate for the work the name of the author with the subdivision –**Characters–[name of character]** (cf. H 1610). *Example:*

```
600 10 $a Doyle, Arthur Conan, $c Sir, $d 1859-1930
        $x Characters $x Sherlock Holmes.
650 #0 $a Holmes, Sherlock (Fictitious character)
```

d. Fiction about individual corporate bodies, places, and sacred works. For criticism of fiction about particular corporate bodies, places, or sacred works, assign the name of the entity with the free-floating subdivision –**In literature**, e.g. **United States. Federal Bureau of Investigation–In literature; Tahiti (French Polynesia)–In literature; Bible–In literature**.

6. *History and criticism.* (Continued)

e. Fiction about wars and similar events. For works about the fiction of a specific war, revolution, uprising, etc., assign [*name of event*]-**Literature and the war, [revolution, uprising, etc.]** as a topical heading (cf. H 1200).

f. Single works of fiction. For works about an individual novel or story in one of the categories described in sec. 4.a-4.c, above, assign a heading for the individual work as well as a heading for the theme, e.g.

```
600 10 $a Mitchell, Margaret, $d 1900-1949. $t Gone with the
wind.
650 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865
      $x Literature and the war.
```

LC practice:

SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

1. Application of special provisions. The Library of Congress applies special provisions for increased subject access to fiction as internal resources permit. As of January 2001 these provisions were being applied to cataloging for current acquisitions of American novels and novels of other English-language literatures.

2. General principles. The assignment of subject headings to individual works of fiction is intended to provide the average public library user with an additional method of selecting recreational reading. Several types of subject headings are available to provide this access. Any, all, or none of the following categories of headings may be appropriate for an individual work of fiction: form/genre, character, setting, topic. These headings should be assigned only as they come readily to mind after a superficial review of the work being cataloged.

3. Form and genre headings.

a. Source of headings. Select an appropriate heading or headings from the second edition of the *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc.*, for example, **Love stories; Science fiction**. If an appropriate genre heading is not available from the *Guidelines*, an unqualified genre heading may be selected from *LCSH*. Generally assign no more than one or two genre headings, expressing only the primary genre(s) of the work.

H 1790 Literature: Fiction

LC practice:

SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

3. *Form and genre headings.* (Continued)

b. Specificity. Apply the same principle of specificity used in non-literary cataloging, e.g. **Arthurian romances**, not **Romances**; **War stories**, not **Historical fiction**. Do not assign broad headings such as **Fiction** or **Short stories**. Do not include adjectival qualifiers or subdivisions that show the language of the work or that reflect the characteristics of the author, such as nationality, religion, sex, ethnic background.

c. MARC21 content designation and input conventions. Form/genre headings for individual works use the MARC tag 655, not 650. For headings from LCSH, the second indicator contains the value **0**. For headings from the *Guidelines*, the second indicator contains the value **7** and the code **gsafd** in a subfield \$2 following the heading. When assigned, these headings are input following other LC subject headings and following any AC juvenile subject headings.

*Note: The second indicator value of 0 for LCSH was added to the 655 field in MARC21 in 2003 and implemented at the Library of Congress in 2004. Records cataloged before 2004 indicate the source of headings from LCSH through the use of the second indicator value of 7 and the code **lcs** in a subfield \$2.*

d. Updating of form/genre headings. LC will maintain the currency of form/genre headings for which the source is *LCSH*. Headings from the *Guidelines* will be assigned from the most current edition available at the time of cataloging, but will not be updated if changes are made in later editions.

4. *Character(s).*

a. Individual characters. If the work prominently features a real person, a legendary character, or other major character not created by the author of the work, assign a subject heading for the name of the character with appropriate subdivision such as **–Fiction** or **–Juvenile fiction**. If the primary character is a fictitious character created by the author, assign a subject heading only if the character appears in three or more works. For instructions on proposing subject headings for fictitious characters see SCM H 1610.

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. (Continued)

b. Topical information. This refers to the theme of the manuscript, i.e. the topic or topics that the text of the manuscript is about. Assign topical headings in accordance with normal policies for assigning headings to topical works.

The topical headings assigned should be subdivided, when appropriate, by the various form subdivisions normally used under topical headings. Two situations that require the use of form subdivisions are especially common when cataloging manuscripts:

- If the manuscript being cataloged (with or without commentary) was completed before 1800, use the subdivision **–Early works to 1800**, for example, **Military engineering–Early works to 1800**.
- If the manuscript (or selection from a manuscript) being cataloged was issued to highlight its artwork, designate the theme of the art, when appropriate, by assigning headings of the type **[topic] in art**, **[name of person, deity, or legendary figure]–Art**, or **[name of corporate body or place]–In art**.

Note: Do not use –Manuscripts as a form subdivision except in the case of facsimile editions of literary works, described in sec. 1.f., below, and facsimiles of music manuscripts (cf. H 1595, sec. 2.d.). Under most conditions, –Manuscripts is used under topical headings for works that discuss collections of manuscripts on those topics.

H 1855 Manuscripts

1. *Individual manuscripts and works about them.* (Continued)

c. Category of religious work. If a manuscript is representative of a special category of religious works, bring this out by assigning the appropriate form heading if it has been established in the subject authority file. The following are examples of this type of heading: **Breviaries; Buddhist mantras; Divine office; Evangeliaries; Books of hours; Missals; [name of religious denomination]–Prayers and devotions; Psalters; Sacramentaries.**

If the complete original text is present in the work, use the subdivision **–Texts** after this heading, for example, **Psalters–Texts.**

Exception: Do not use the subdivision **–Texts** under the heading **[name of religious denomination]–Prayers and devotions.**

If the focus of the work is on its illuminations, or it consists only of illuminations, use the subdivision **–Illustrations** under this heading, for example, **Psalters–Illustrations.**

d. Liturgical use by specific religion or denomination. If the manuscript being cataloged is not only a religious work but also a work used in the liturgy of a particular religion or denomination, bring this out by assigning a separate heading using the appropriate subdivision from H 1185 or H 1187, for example, **Buddhism–Rituals; Catholic Church–Liturgy.**

If the work includes the text of the manuscript, use the subdivision **–Texts** under this heading; if the work consists only of commentary, use **–Texts–History and criticism** in accordance with H 1185 or H 1187, for example, **Judaism–Liturgy–Texts–History and criticism.**

If the focus of the work is on its illuminations, or if it consists only of selected illuminations, use the subdivision **–Texts–Illustrations**, for example, **Catholic Church–Liturgy–Texts–Illustrations.**

1. *Individual manuscripts and works about them.* (Continued)

i. Name of manuscript. To all works about a manuscript, including those that contain the original text, assign a heading for the name of the physical manuscript if it is known, for example, **Bamberg Apocalypse; Isabella psalter.**

Since this heading is a uniform title, it must be separately established in the name authority file. Do not use the corresponding heading for the textual content of the manuscript. For example, use **Isabella psalter, not Catholic Church. Psalter (Ms. Isabella psalter).**

If the name of the manuscript is unknown, assign the repository designation as a heading.
Examples:

```
610 20 $a Bodleian Library. $k Manuscript. $n Douce 180.  
610 20 $a Biblioteca apostolica vaticana. $k Manuscript.  
$n Cod. Cap. 63B.
```

Do not assign *both* the manuscript name and the repository designation to the same work. Assign the manuscript name whenever it is known.

If the focus of the work is on its illuminations, if the work consists only of selected illuminations, or if the work is a discussion of the illuminations, use the subdivision **–Illustrations** under either of these types of headings. Code **–Illustrations** as an \$x subfield if the work discusses the illuminations. Code it as a \$v subfield if the work consists of the actual illuminations. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Bamberg Apocalypse $x Illustrations.  
610 20 $a Bodleian Library. $k Manuscript. $n Douce 180  
$v Illustrations.
```

H 1855 Manuscripts

1. *Individual manuscripts and works about them.* (Continued)

j. Institution where housed, etc. In order to bring out the location and ownership of a manuscript, assign one or more headings of the type described below to works that discuss a particular manuscript, including those that contain the text. Assign these headings when the required information is readily available.

(1) *General rule.* If a manuscript is not privately owned, bring out the name of the institution in which it is permanently housed, for example, **Biblioteca apostolica vaticana**.

If the manuscript is a part of a special collection of the institution, use a special collection subdivision under the heading for the name of the institution, as described in sec. 1.j.(2), below.

Omit this heading if, in accordance with sec. 1.i., above, a heading was assigned for the repository designation.

(2) *Manuscripts in named collections.* In addition to the heading for the institution where the manuscript is permanently housed, assign the heading for the name of the collection (cf. H 1427). *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Bradfer-Lawrence, Harry Lawrence $x Art  
collections.  
600 30 $a Barberini family $x Library.  
610 20 $a New-York Historical Society $x Archives.
```

If the name of the collection consists of the name of the institution where the manuscript is housed followed by a collection subdivision, the one heading satisfies the requirements of both sec. 1.j.(1) and 1.j.(2).

(3) *Original owner.* If the original owner is often associated with a particular manuscript, also assign the heading for his or her name. Use a collection subdivision, such as **–Library**, under this heading only if it is known that the manuscript was originally stored as part of a collection. For example, in the case of *La Bibbia di Borso d'Este*, assign the heading **Borso d'Este, Duke of Ferrara, Modena and Reggio, 1413-1471**.

Moving Image Genre/Form Headings H 1913

BACKGROUND: Moving image works are defined as those created by recording moving visual images, with or without sound. Individual moving image works are usually cataloged in the Motion Picture/Broadcasting/Recorded Sound Division (M/B/RS) of the Library of Congress. This instruction sheet provides special guidelines for the assignment of genre/form headings to works cataloged by M/B/RS. For guidelines on assigning subject headings to bring out the content of individual moving image works, see H 2230.

Note: As used in this instruction sheet and in the genre/form headings themselves, the term **films** refers to works that are originally recorded and released on motion picture film, on video, or digitally. The phrase **television programs** refers to those works that are originally telecast.

1. Assignment of genre/form headings.

a. General rule. Assign genre/form headings to both fiction and nonfiction works. Headings may be assigned from different levels of the same hierarchy if desired.

b. Limiting to fiction or non-fiction. Also assign one of the headings in the following list to each work to distinguish between fiction and nonfiction treatments of a subject:

Fiction films
Nonfiction films
Fiction television programs
Nonfiction television programs

Examples:

Title: Till the clouds roll by.
655 #0 \$a Biographical films.
655 #0 \$a Fiction films.

Title: Survivor : Thailand.
655 #0 \$a Survival television programs.
655 #0 \$a Nonfiction television programs.

H 1913 Moving Image Genre/Form Headings

1. Assignment of genre/form headings.

b. Limiting to fiction or non-fiction.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Harlan County, U.S.A.
655 #0 \$a Documentary films.
655 #0 \$a Nonfiction films

c. Short films or Feature films. Additionally, for motion pictures assign either **Short films** or **Feature films** as appropriate. Short films are defined as those running less than 40 minutes, and feature films are full-length films running 40 minutes or longer.

d. Multiple genres. Assign as many genre/form headings as necessary to bring out important forms and genres to which the work belongs. *Example:*

Title: The Wizard of Oz
655 #0 \$a Musical films.
655 #0 \$a Fantasy films.
655 #0 \$a Children's films.
655 #0 \$a Film adaptations.
655 #0 \$a Fiction films.
655 #0 \$a Feature films.

e. Moving image works for people with disabilities.

(1) Hearing impaired. Assign either **Films for the hearing impaired** or **Television programs for the hearing impaired** to all moving-image works produced with captions or sign language for viewing by the hearing impaired.

Do not assign this heading to works in one language with subtitles in another language if the subtitles are intended only as a translation, and not specifically as an aid for the hearing impaired.

(2) Visually impaired. Assign either **Films for people with visual disabilities** or **Television programs for people with visual disabilities** to all moving-image works with additional audio description provided for people with visual disabilities.

Moving Image Genre/Form Headings H 1913

2. Construction of headings.

a. General rule. All genre/form headings must be established. For general guidelines on the creation of subject authority records, see H 200.

b. Form of heading.

(1) Use of terms already in LCSH. Before proposing a new genre/form heading, search LCSH to determine whether there is a topical subject heading that is appropriate for use as a genre/form heading. If there is, propose that the new genre/form heading be identical to the topical heading.

Example: The work in hand is a recording of a television interview. The topical term **Interviews** exists in LCSH and can be proposed for use as a genre/form heading. (The additional genre/form heading **Nonfiction television programs** may be added to the bibliographic record bring out the format of the work.)

(2) Construction of new headings. Create separate headings for film and television genres and forms. Prefer the formulas [. . .] **films** and [. . .] **television programs**, although headings of the type **Film** [. . .] or **Television** [. . .] may also be proposed if appropriate. If neither of the above two options is practical (e.g., due to common usage or literary warrant), then headings may be constructed by using the qualifiers (**Motion pictures**) or (**Television programs**). *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Horror films
155 ## $a Film adaptations
155 ## $a Rushes (Motion pictures)
155 ## $a Horror television programs
155 ## $a Television adaptations
155 ## $a Variety shows (Television programs)
```

c. References. Construct references according to the following guidelines, which follow the general principles for references presented in H 370.

H 1913 Moving Image Genre/Form Headings

2. Construction of headings.

c. References. (continued)

(1) **Used for references.** Add 455 fields for variant terminology and/or different forms of heading.

(2) **Broader term references.** Judiciously add broader term references for explicit class/class member relationships. Genre/form headings without broader terms are permissible. *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Romantic comedy films
555 ## $w g $a Comedy films
```

```
155 ## $a Cinéma vérité
555 ## $w g $a Documentary films
```

[*but* 155 ## \$a Buddy films]

(3) **Related term references.** Link through related term references those terms with meanings that overlap to some extent, or that are used somewhat interchangeably.

```
155 ## $a Disaster films
555 ## $a Survival films
```

```
155 ## $a Survival films
555 ## $a Disaster films
```

d. **Scope notes.** Add a scope note to define the meaning of the genre/form heading if necessary. Consult H 400 for guidance.

```
155 ## $a Social guidance films
680 ## $i Here are entered films designed to guide people,
usually teenagers, in proper behavior, dating,
etiquette, and other social interaction.
```

Moving Image Genre/Form Headings H 1913

2. *Construction of headings.* (continued)

e. Suggested reference sources. When possible, consult one or more of the following sources:

Katz, Ephraim. *The film encyclopedia.*

Konigsberg, Ira. *The complete film dictionary.*

Lopez, Daniel. *Films by genre : 775 categories, styles, trends and movements defined, with a filmography for each.*

Taves, Brian. *The moving image genre-form guide.*

<http://www.loc.gov/rr/mopic/migintro.html>

Yee, Martha M. *Moving image materials : genre terms.*

3. MARC 21 content designation and input conventions. Genre/form headings are recorded in field 155 in the authority format, with both indicators blank. In the bibliographic format they are recorded in field 655 with a second indicator of **0** (zero).

Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium H 1917.5 of Performance

9. Chorus. (Continued)

b. Chorus not stated or implied in the main heading. A chorus may be present in a work to which a main heading is assigned that does not state or imply any particular medium of performance. Add a parenthetical qualifier for medium of performance with the term “chorus” as the first element. The full order of elements in the qualifier is sung part(s), solo instrument, accompaniment. Do not use the qualifier “, **Unaccompanied**” when chorus is the only medium of performance, and do not indicate either the type of chorus or the nature of the text. Where appropriate, a second heading may be added that contains those elements.
Examples:

650 #0 \$a Canons, fugues, etc. (Chorus)
650 #0 \$a Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices, 5 parts),
Unaccompanied. [*second heading*]

650 #0 \$a Monologues with music (Chorus with band)
650 #0 \$a Choruses, Secular (Mixed voices) with band. [*second heading*]

650 #0 \$a Variations (Chorus and trumpet with orchestra)
650 #0 \$a Choruses, Secular (Children’s voices) with
orchestra. [*second heading*]

10. Accompaniment for vocal music. When instrumental accompaniment is given in headings that include vocal parts, it is the last element in the heading. For unaccompanied works, see sec.11.

a. Accompaniment not given in the heading. No indication of accompaniment is added to headings for larger vocal forms and dramatic works, of which the following list is representative:

Cantatas
Masses
Musicals
Operas
Oratorios
Requiems
Sacred pantomimes with music
Solo cantatas

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

10. *Accompaniment for vocal music.* (Continued)

b. One instrument or two keyboard instruments. Name specific instruments as the medium of performance for the accompaniment of vocal music only if the accompaniment consists of one instrument or two of the same keyboard instrument.

Examples:

650 #0 \$a Choruses, Secular (Mixed voices) with piano.
650 #0 \$a Sacred songs (High voice) with oboe.
650 #0 \$a Vocal quartets with pianos (2)
650 #0 \$a Vocalises with piano.

c. Other instrumental accompaniment. Groups of two or more accompanying instruments (excepting two of the same keyboard instrument) are indicated by the appropriate term for the type of ensemble. See also sec. 5.b(4)

Examples:

650 #0 \$a Canons, fugues, etc. (Chorus with instrumental ensemble)
[not, e.g., 650 #0 \$a Canons, fugues, etc. (Chorus and trumpet with organ)]

650 #0 \$a Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with brass ensemble.
[not, e.g., 650 #0 \$a Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with brass trio.]

650 #0 \$a Songs (High voice) with string ensemble.
[not, e.g., 650 #0 \$a Songs (High voice) with string quartet.]

650 #0 \$a Songs (Medium voice) with orchestra.

Personal Narratives H 1928

BACKGROUND: *The subdivision –Personal narratives is a free-floating form subdivision used under names of events and wars for collective or individual eyewitness reports and/or autobiographical accounts of these events and wars. Prior to 1977, the subdivision was used more widely under classes of persons, types of activities, and diseases. Those uses were replaced by the subdivision –Biography under classes of persons. For instructions on assigning headings to diaries and journals, see H 1538. For instructions on assigning headings to personal correspondence, see H 1480.*

1. General rule. Use the subdivision –**Personal narratives** under names of individual events or wars.

If the work being cataloged covers a particular event such as a battle which is part of a larger conflict, assign the heading for the specific event subdivided by –**Personal narratives**.

2. National or ethnic qualifier. When used under names of wars, battles, etc., qualify the subdivision –**Personal narratives** by a national or ethnic qualifier to bring out the nationality or ethnic background of the narrator(s) of the account(s), for example, **World War, 1939-1945–Personal narratives, American**.

Under names of events not associated with a war or military conflict, omit the national or ethnic qualifier.

3. Assignment of subject headings.

a. Name heading for the person. For individual personal narratives, assign the name of the author of the work as a subject heading.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. If an individual personal narrative contains at least 50% autobiographical information, treat it as a biography following the provisions of H 1330. If the work is an eyewitness report containing less than 50% autobiographical details, do not treat it as a biography.

c. Other subject headings. Assign other subject headings as appropriate to the work being cataloged.

H 1928 Personal Narratives

4. Order of headings.

a. Narratives that include personal information about the author. If an individual personal narrative contains a significant amount of personal information regarding the author, assign the name of the author as the first subject heading.

b. Narratives with little personal information about the author. If the narrative is essentially an eyewitness account of what happened with little personal information about the author, assign the name of the war or event as the first subject heading; assign the name of the author as an additional subject heading.

5. **MARC21 biography coding.** Assign code **a**, **c**, or **d**, as appropriate in field 008/34 (the box labeled **Biography** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS).

6. Examples.

Title: Few eggs and no oranges.

[diary about Londoners during World War II]
600 10 \$a [name of author] \$v Diaries.
650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$v Personal narratives,
British.
651 #0 \$a London (England) \$v Biography.

Title: A rumor of war.

600 10 \$a [name of author]
650 #0 \$a Vietnam War, 1961-1975 \$v Personal narratives,
American.
650 #0 \$a Soldiers \$z United States \$v Biography.
610 10 \$a United States. \$b Marine Corps \$v Biography.

Title: Adventure in diplomacy : our French dilemma.

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$z Africa, North.
650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$x Diplomatic history.
600 10 \$a [name of author]
650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$v Personal narratives,
American.

Title: The year of the buzz bomb; a journal of London, 1944.

651 #0 \$a London (England) \$x History \$y Bombardment, 1944
\$v Personal narratives, American.
600 10 \$a [name of author] \$v Diaries.
650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$z England \$z London.
650 #0 \$a Guided missiles \$x History.

Postage Stamps on Specific Topics H 1945

BACKGROUND: Until 1993, works about the portrayal of specific subjects on postage stamps were entered under the heading **Postage-stamps–Topics–[name of topic]**. Because this was an awkward construction and because the subfield coding could be confusing, especially when the topic portrayed is the name of a place, this heading was replaced in 1993 by the natural language phrase **[topic] on postage stamps**, or, in the case of topics that are tagged 100, 110, 111, 130, or 151, by headings of the type **[topic]–On postage stamps**. The latter formulation is used so that the tagging of the basic heading does not change to 150. These headings are not to be divided by place, because the resulting construction would be ambiguous as to whether the place refers to the location of the topic or the place of issue of the stamps. The latter place may be brought out by assigning an additional heading. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for constructing and assigning headings of this type.

1. Topics portrayed on postage stamps. For works about the portrayal of a specific topic on postage stamps, establish a subject heading according to the following model:

```
150 ## $a [topic] on postage stamps
550 ## $w g $a Postage stamps
```

Do not divide these headings by place.

2. Individual persons, corporate bodies, meeting, uniform titles, or places portrayed on postage stamps. For works about the portrayal of entities tagged 100, 110, 111, 130, or 151 on postage stamps, assign the free-floating subdivision **–On postage stamps** under the heading for the entity.
Examples:

```
600 10 $a Presley, Elvis, $d 1935-1977 $x On postage stamps.
610 20 $a United Nations $x On postage stamps.
611 20 $a Woodstock Festival $d (1969 : $c Bethel, N.Y.)
        $x On postage stamps.
630 00 $a Bible $x On postage stamps.
651 #0 $a New York (N.Y.) $x On postage stamps.
```

Do not further subdivide these headings by place.

H 1945 Postage Stamps on Specific Topics

3. *Place of issue.* If the work is limited to postage stamps issued in a specific place, and it is useful to bring out the place, do so by assigning the additional heading **Postage stamps**– [*place*], or, if appropriate, a more specific heading such as **Commemorative postage stamps**–[*place*].

4. *Examples.*

Title: Ships on stamps.

650 #0 \$a Ships on postage stamps.

Title: The Woodstock catalogue of British Elizabethan postage stamps.

600 00 \$a Elizabeth \$b II, \$c Queen of Great Britain,
\$d 1926- \$x On postage stamps \$v Catalogs.

650 #0 \$a Postage stamps \$z Great Britain \$v Catalogs.

Title: Rotary International on stamps.

610 20 \$a Rotary International \$x On postage stamps.

Title: American history through United States stamps.

651 #0 \$a United States \$x History \$x On postage stamps.

650 #0 \$a Postage stamps \$z United States.

Songs and Music H 2075

1. *Musical works.* (Continued)

- Music that is otherwise associated with the heading.

Note: Check the subject authority file to ascertain whether a phrase heading has been established that would be used instead of **–Songs and music** or that offers a choice between 2 or more similar headings.

Example:

Title: Smoking and drinking. [madrigals]
650 #0 \$a Smoking \$v Songs and music.
650 #0 \$a Drinking songs.

Exception: Do not use this subdivision for dramatic works with music that can be staged, such as an opera or a ballet; for such works use the subdivision **–Drama**.

Examples:

Title: Nixon in China / John Adams. [opera]
600 10 \$a Nixon, Richard M. \$q (Richard Milhous)
\$d 1913-1994 \$v Drama.

Title: Cats / Andrew Lloyd Webber [musical]
650 #0 \$a Cats \$v Drama.

2. **History and criticism.** For works that discuss the songs or music about a topic or entity, further subdivide **–Songs and music** by **–History and criticism**. *Examples:*

Title: The Faust legend in music.
600 10 \$a Faust, \$d d. ca. 1540 \$x Songs and music
\$x History and criticism.

Title: La musique maçonnique et ses musiciens.
610 20 \$a Freemasons \$x Songs and music \$x History and
criticism.

H 2075 Songs and Music

2. *History and criticism.*

Examples: (Continued)

Title: The urban & industrial songs of the Black Country and Birmingham.

650 #0 \$a Working class \$z England \$x Songs and music
\$x History and criticism.

Exception: Under headings for specific wars, etc., do not use **–Songs and music– History and criticism**. Use [*name of war, revolution, etc.*]**–Music and the war, [revolution, etc.]**, as described in H 1200.

3. *Literature.*

a. *General.* Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Sources** under literatures, including individual genres, for discussions of sources of ideas or inspiration for these literary works, for example, **English poetry–Early modern, 1500-1700–Sources**.

b. *Individual literary authors.* In accordance with H 1110, assign the free-floating subdivision –**Sources** under names of individual literary authors for works discussing the individual's sources of ideas or inspiration for his literary works and for collections of those source materials, for example, **Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616–Sources**.

4. *Names of persons.* In accordance with H 1110, assign the free-floating subdivision –**Sources** under names of persons for works discussing the individual's sources of ideas or inspiration for his endeavors or creative works, and for collections of those source materials. *Example:*

Title: Fritz Eichenberg : artist on the witness stand.

600 10 \$a Eichenberg, Fritz, \$d 1901-1990 \$x Sources.

600 10 \$a Eichenberg, Fritz, \$d 1901-1990 \$x Psychology.

Do not further subdivide headings of the type [*name of person*]–[*topic*] by –**Sources** or –**History–Sources**. For collections of source material on a special topic about a person, assign a heading of the type [*name of person*]–[*topic*], and the additional topical headings required by H 1110, sec. 8, subdivided by –**Sources**. *Example:*

Title: Abraham Lincoln's views of slavery : documents.

600 10 \$a Lincoln, Abraham, \$d 1809-1865 \$x Views on slavery.

650 #0 \$a Slavery \$z United States \$x History \$y 19th century \$v Sources.

H 2080 Sources

5. Law.

a. Systems of law. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Sources** under systems of law for works containing historical documents such as acts, customs, court decisions and records, jurists' writings, etc., that led to the formation of a particular legal system, and for works discussing these documents. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Canon law \$v Sources.
650 #0 \$a Islamic law \$v Sources.
650 #0 \$a Law \$z Burma \$v Sources.
650 #0 \$a Law, Cherokee \$v Sources.

b. Legal topics. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Sources** under headings of the type [legal topic]–**History** for collections and discussions of documents serving as source materials for the history of the topic. For collections, code –**Sources \$v**; for discussions of sources, code –**Sources \$x**. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Feudal law \$z Italy \$x History \$v Sources.
650 #0 \$a Press law \$z Uruguay \$x History \$x Sources.
650 #0 \$a Educational law and legislation \$z France
\$x History \$x Sources.
650 #0 \$a Slavery \$x Law and legislation \$z United States
\$x History \$v Sources.

6. Bibliographies and catalogs.

a. Bibliographies. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Bibliography** under headings of the type [topic]–**Sources** or [topic]–**History**–**Sources** for bibliographies of source materials on the topic. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Crusades \$x Sources \$v Bibliography.
650 #0 \$a Technology \$x History \$x Sources \$v Bibliography.

Tables H 2160

BACKGROUND: *The subdivision –Tables is used for works in tabular form that present systematic listings of results already computed, worked out, or processed, and that are to be used as reference tools to reduce the labor of computers and investigators, or to form a basis for future predictions. Works of this type are to be distinguished from those that merely present lists of unprocessed or raw data resulting from survey, experimentation, observation, etc., for which headings or subdivisions representing special kinds of statistics, measurements, observations, etc. are used. For instructions on cataloging works containing statistical data, see H 2095.*

1. General rule. Use the subdivision –**Tables** as a free-floating form subdivision under topical headings for works of the type described above. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Food \$x Caloric content \$v Tables.
650 #0 \$a Gas lasers \$v Tables.
650 #0 \$a Ellipsometry \$v Tables.
650 #0 \$a Photographic surveying \$v Tables.
650 #0 \$a Irrigation canals and flumes \$v Tables.
650 #0 \$a Mortality \$z Latin America \$v Tables.

2. Obsolete forms. Other subdivisions designating tables were used in the past, including –**Tables and ready-reckoners**; –**Tables, calculations, etc.**; –**Tables, etc.**; –**Formulae, tables, etc.**

LC practice:

Do not assign these subdivisions. When they are encountered in the bibliographic database, replace them with the subdivision –**Tables**.

3. Conversion tables. Use the subdivision –**Conversion tables** as a free-floating form subdivision under topical headings for tables of equivalents for changing units of measure or weight into other units. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Temperature \$v Conversion tables.
650 #0 \$a Time \$v Conversion tables.

Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings H 2230

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides special guidelines for the assignment of subject headings to motion pictures, slides, filmstrips, video recordings, and other types of visual materials, as well as to non-music sound recordings. These guidelines are followed in addition to the normal rules for the assignment of subject headings.*

*Note: As used in this instruction sheet, the word **film** is understood to refer to any type of visual material.*

1. General rules. Assign subject headings for all important topics mentioned in the summary statement (520 field).

If a specific topic is emphasized in order to illustrate a more general concept, assign subject headings for both the specific and the general topics.

Assign form subdivisions only to the extent that such subdivisions are applicable both to print and audiovisual media. Do not use the form subdivision –**Pictorial works** for visual materials.

Examples:

520 ## \$a Describes the highlights of Colombia, including the
production of coffee.

651 #0 \$a Colombia \$x Description and travel.

650 #0 \$a Coffee \$z Colombia.

520 ## \$a Surveys the industries of India, with special emphasis
on the steel industry.

650 #0 \$a Industries \$z India.

650 #0 \$a Steel industry and trade \$z India.

520 ## \$a Documents the intellectual expansion in medieval
Germany, as illustrated by the Nuremberg chronicle.

600 10 \$a Schedel, Hartmann, \$d 1440-1514. \$t Liber
chronicarum.

651 #0 \$a Germany \$x Intellectual life.

H 2230 Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings

2. Particular places. When a topic is discussed in conjunction with a particular place, make, insofar as possible, a subject entry under both the topic and the place. *Examples:*

520 ## \$a Describes the oases of the Sahara.
650 #0 \$a Oases \$z Sahara.
651 #0 \$a Sahara \$x Description and travel.

520 ## \$a Interviews with medical personnel and participants in a drug abuse treatment program in New York City.
650 #0 \$a Drug abuse \$z New York (State) \$z New York.
651 #0 \$a New York (N.Y.) \$x Social conditions.

3. Particular persons. When a particular person is treated as illustrative of a profession or activity, assign a heading for both the person and the field of endeavor. Do not, as a general rule, treat such materials as biographies. *Example:*

520 ## \$a A day in the life of prizefighter Muhammad Ali as he trains for a championship bout.
600 10 \$a Ali, Muhammad, \$d 1942-
650 #0 \$a Boxing.

4. Special types of visual materials.

a. Fiction films. Assign topical headings with the subdivision **–Drama** (or, in the case of juvenile fiction films, the subdivision **–Juvenile films**). Assign headings of this type to the same extent that such headings are assigned to individual dramas in book form (cf. H 1780, sec. 4).

b. Foreign language teaching films. Assign the heading [...] **language–Films for [...] speakers** as the first heading, and bring out any special topics by assigning additional headings.

c. Juvenile films. See H 1690.

d. Films for the hearing impaired and for people with disabilities. See H 1913, sec. 1.e.

5. Moving image genre/form headings. See H 1913.

Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings H 2230

LC practice:

6. Treatment of "editions".

a. Audio or visual presentations of published works. If the contents of the printed edition and the sound recording or visual presentation are the same, the subject cataloging should match, even if it is necessary to assign new, more appropriate headings to the printed edition(s).

b. Identical works in different formats. A single work is sometimes issued in more than one format, for example, as a motion picture and as a video recording, or as a cassette and as a compact disc. The subject headings for the work in all formats with records in MARC should match, even if it is necessary to correct the subject headings that were assigned when the work was originally cataloged in another format.

7. 043 fields. Assign geographic area codes in the 043 field as appropriate.

Chronological subdivisions: H 620, H 1075 (2)
 Art: H 1148 (2-3)
 –**Foreign relations**: H 870 (3)
 –**History**: H 1647 (2-3)
 Jazz and popular music: H 1916.5 (2-4)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (2-3)

Chronology: H 1367
Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

Churches
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Circuses
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cities
SEE ALSO City parks
 City sections
 Extinct cities (pre-1500)
 Natural features in cities
 names of specific cities
 –**Buildings, structures, etc.**: H 832 (1), **H 1334.5**
 Airports: H 1211
 Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)
 Cities assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)
 "City flip" discontinued: H 832 (1)
 –**Description and travel**: H 1530
 Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.: H 832 (1), **H 1560**
 Event headings as subdivisions under cities: H 1592 (9)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 Geographic qualifiers for entities in cities: H 810 (5)
 Buildings: H 1334 (4)
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 832
 [. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 [. . .] **Region**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 [. . .] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3)
 Subdivisions formerly used under cities: H 832 (2-3)

Citing sources in subject authority records: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**
 Authority research guidelines: H 202 (3-8)

Citizen participation as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

City districts
SEE City sections

"City flip"
 Discontinued: **H 832**, H 1560 (1)

City halls: H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

City parks
 SEE ALSO Parks
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1925 (6)
 Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

City sections: H 720
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**

City streets
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)
 Subject heading proposals: H 2098
 Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)
 Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Civic centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Civil trials: H 2228 (2-3)

Civil wars
 Pattern heading: H 1200

Civilization: H 1370
 SEE ALSO Ethnic groups
 Religious sects
 Ancient peoples
 Influence of one civilization on another: H 1370 (4)
 Special civilizations of particular places: H 1370 (3)
 [*topic*] and civilization: H 1370 (5)
 Types of civilization: H 1370 (2)

Civilization as a subdivision: H 1370 (2-3)
 Period subdivisions: H 1370 (3)

CJK subject headings in RLIN: H 182

Clans
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Clarinet
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Classes of persons
 SEE ALSO Ancient peoples
 Ethnic groups
 Indians
 Literary authors, Groups of
 Nationalities
 [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

Classes of persons (*Continued*)

Biography: H 1330 (2-4)

Immigrants: H 1581 (3)

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1330 (3)

–**Correspondence:** H 1480 (2)

–**Diaries:** H 1538

–**Directories:** H 1558 (1)

Ethnic groups as qualifiers: H 351

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

[. . .] in [. . .] headings: H 360

Nationalities as qualifiers: H 350

–**Portraits:** H 1935 (2)

–**Psychological testing:** H 2186

–**Religious life:** H 2015.5 (1-2)

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Classification as a subdivision

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: **H 365**

Adding numbers to new records: H 200 (3, 15)

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Changing numbers in existing records: H 193 (3), **H 196**

Literature headings: H 365 (2)

Musical instrument headings: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Club houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Coding headings (*May Subd Geog*), (*Not Subd Geog*), etc.: H 364

Coin collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Coliseums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Collected works as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1425

Collections, Public or Private

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Collections as a subdivision: H 1425

Collections of documents: H 1643 (2)

Collections of manuscripts: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Collections of objects

Assignment of subject headings: H 1427 (2-5)

Catalogs: H 1360, H 1427 (2)

–**Indexes** not used: H 1670 (3)

Partial title added entries for names of collections: H 1427 (3)

Subdivisions for types of collections: H 1427 (1)

Collections of treaties: H 2227 (1-2)
Collective farms
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
Collective settlements
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
Colleges
 SEE ALSO Universities and colleges
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
Colonies of individual countries
 SEE ALSO **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision
 Pattern heading: H 1149.5
Comarcas: H 760 (3)
Comets
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)
Comfort stations, Public
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Comic characters: H 1430
 SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
Comic strips: H 1430
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Commas
 SEE Punctuation
Commentaries on commentaries: H 1435 (4)
Commentaries on individual works
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1435 (2-6)
 Anonymous classics: H 1435 (3)
 Converting form headings to topical equivalents: H 1435 (5)
 Sacred works: H 1435 (3)
 Treatment of a work as an edition or as a commentary: H 1435 (1)
 Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary: H 1435 (6)
Commercial treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (2)
Commonwealth of Independent States: H 1023 (4)
Communes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Community centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)
Competitions
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Composers: H 1438
 Biography: H 1438 (1)
 –**Criticism and interpretation**: H 1438 (1)
 Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (2)

Composers (*Continued*)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110, H 1438 (1)

Works about specific compositions: H 1438 (2)

Works about their music with a specific focus or on a specific form: H 1438 (1, 3)

Compositions, Musical

SEE Musical compositions

Compound family names: H 1631 (4)

Compound subject headings: H 310

Computer languages

SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Computer networks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Computer programs, Individual: H 2070 (2-3)

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Computer programs as a subdivision: H 2070 (1)

Computer simulation: H 2040 (2)

Computer software: H 2070

Individual programs established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Computer systems

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Concentration camps

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concert halls

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concordances as a subdivision: H 1670 (3)

Concordats: H 2227 (1)

Concrete

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158

Conferences

Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)

Conglomerate corporations, Asian

SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Congo: H 928

Congolese as an adjectival qualifier: H 928 (3)

Congresses: H 1460

Congresses as a subdivision: H 1205 (1), **H 1460**

Congresses-Attendance as a subdivision: H 1460 (2)

Conservation districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Constitutional amendments: H 1465 (4-5)

Constitutional history: H 1465 (5)

Constitutional law: H 1465 (2-3)

Constitutions: H 1465
 Corporate bodies: H 1465 (6)
Constructing subject headings: H 180 (7-8)
 Music: H 250, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5
 Musical instruments: H 1918
Construction industry
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153
Content designation
 SEE Tagging subject headings
 Subfield coding
Contests
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 1592 (2)
Continents
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Contracts: H 1468
Contracts and specifications as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1468 (1), H 2083 (1)
Controversial literature as a subdivision: H 1472
Convention centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
Convents
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Conversion tables as a subdivision: H 2160
Cooking: H 1475
Cooking ingredients: H 1475 (2)
 Establishing headings: H 1475 (4)
Cooking styles: H 1475 (1)
Copper
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149
Core level records: H 170
Corn
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1180
Corporate bodies
 SEE ALSO specific types of corporate bodies
 Biography: H 1330 (4)
 Buildings occupied by corporate bodies
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)
 Constitutions: H 1465 (6)
 –**Directories:** H 1558 (2)
 Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Corporate bodies (*Continued*)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1105

–**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)

Name changes: H 460

Named events focused on a corporate body: H 1592 (7)

[. . .] **Region** headings based on corporate bodies: H 760 (4)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Corporate bodies, Jurisdictional

SEE Geographic name headings

Corporate bodies, Non-jurisdictional

SEE Corporate bodies

Correctional institutions

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Correspondence as a subdivision: H 1480

Classes of persons: H 1480 (2)

Ethnic groups: H 1480 (2)

Correspondence of individual persons: H 1480

–**History–Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)

–**Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)

Countries, cities, etc. as name headings

SEE Geographic name headings

Country clubs

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Counts: H 1574 (3-4)

Coups d'etat

Pattern heading: H 1200

Courthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Crematories

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Criminal trials: H 2228 (2)

Criticism and interpretation as a subdivision

Composers: H 1438 (1)

Croatia: H 1055

Crops

Pattern heading: H 1180

Cross-cultural studies as a subdivision: H 1510

Cross references

SEE Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"Used for" references

Cruises

Dates in headings for specific cruises: H 1078

Formulating headings: H 1592

Cuisines, National: H 1475 (1)

Cultural revolutions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Culture

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

Cultures

SEE Archaeological periods and culture

Civilization

Customhouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Cyclones

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- D -

Dams

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Dance halls

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Databases: H 1520

Serially issued databases: H 1580.5 (1)

Databases as a subdivision: H 1520, H 1580.5

Dates

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Punctuation of open dates: Appendix D (3)

Dates in subdivisions

SEE ALSO **Early works to 1800** as a subdivision

"Period subdivisions" as a subtopic under specific topics

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Headings for specific events: H 1078

Days, Special: H 1592

Decades, Special: H 1592

Decorations: H 1265

Deities

SEE ALSO Greek and Roman gods

Assignment of subject headings: H 1795 (2)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6)
 Adding 682 notes to explain deletions: H 193.5
 UF references from deleted forms: H 193 (2), H 373 (2)

Deltas
 Formulating headings: H 800 (6)

Demonstrations
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Denominations, Christian
SEE Christian denominations

Denominations, Religious: H 1998 (2-3), H 2015 (2)
SEE ALSO Christian denominations
 Religious sects
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Departments as a subdivision: H 713

Description and travel as a subdivision: H 1530

Descriptive authority records
SEE Name authority records

Descriptive name headings
SEE Name authority records
 Name headings

Deserts
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Design and construction as a subdivision: H 1532

Design as a subdivision: H 1532

Designs and plans as a subdivision: H 1532

Destruction, [date] as a subdivision: H 1560 (2)

Details, Building: H 1334 (8)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Diacritics: Appendix C

Diaries: H 1538
 As a literary genre: H 1538 (2)
 –**History–Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)
 –**Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)

Diaries as a subdivision: **H 1538**

Dictionaries: H 1540

Dictionaries as a subdivision: **H 1540**, H 2184 (1)
Acronyms–Dictionaries not used: H 1206.5
 –**Terminology–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)
 –**Terms and phrases–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

Dictionaries, Juvenile as a subdivision: H 1540 (4)

Dictionaries, Language

SEE Language dictionaries

Dictionaries, Picture

SEE Picture dictionaries

Dictionaries, Subject

SEE Subject dictionaries

Diet therapy–Recipes as a subdivision: H 1475 (2)

Digests as a subdivision: H 1550

Digital computer simulation: H 2040 (2)

Diplomatic relations

SEE **Foreign relations** as a subdivision

Direct subdivision: H 830 (1-2, 5-7)

Direct word order

Topical subject headings: H 306

Directional qualifiers (**Northern, Southern, Central**, etc.)

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Directories: H 1558

Directories–Bibliography: H 1558 (1)

Directories, Telephone

SEE **Telephone directories** as a subdivision

Directories as a subdivision: H 1558

Archival resources: H 1230 (3)

–**Periodicals** not used as further subdivision: H 1558 (4), H 1927 (2)

Disasters

SEE ALSO specific types of disasters

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

Discography as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Discontinued subdivisions

–**Addresses, essays, lectures:** H 1210

–**Cases, clinical reports, statistics:** H 1350

–**Collected works:** H 1425

–**Contracts and specifications:** H 2083

–**Emigration and immigration–Biography:** H 1581 (1)

–**Exploring expeditions:** H 1564 (1)

–**Foreign population:** H 1581 (1)

–**Government publications:** H 1643 (1)

–**Influence of [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)

–**Influence on [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)

–**Legends and stories:** H 1720 (1)

–**Socioeconomic status:** H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)

–**Stories:** H 1790 (2)

Discontinued subdivisions (*Continued*)

- Suburbs and environs:** H 790 (3)
- Theater disaster, [date]:** H 1560 (2)
- Yearbooks:** H 2400

Discoveries in geography: H 1564 (1)

Discovery and exploration as a subdivision: H 1564

- History** not used: H 1564 (1)

Diseases

- Pattern heading: H 1150

Dispensaries

- Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Dissertations: H 1570

Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Division of the world of named entities: H 405

Docks

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Documents, Collections of: H 1643 (2)

Domes as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

Domestic animals

- SEE ALSO* Animals
- Biological names: H 1332 (6)
- Pattern heading: H 1147

Domestic plants

- SEE ALSO* Plants
- Biological names: H 1332 (6)
- Dividing by place: H 1332 (6)

Doors as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Doubling on two or more musical instruments: H 1917.5 (8)

Drama: H 1780

- Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Drama, English

- SEE* **English drama**

Drama, Folk

- SEE* **Folk drama**

Drama, Juvenile

- SEE* Juvenile drama

Drama as a subdivision: H 1780

- Fiction films: H 2230 (2)
- Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)
- Musical works: H 1916.3 (4), H 2075 (3)
- Place names: H 910 (2)

Dramatists

SEE Literary authors, Groups of
Literary authors, Individual

Drugs

Pattern heading: H 1149

–**Testing**: H 2186 (2)

Duets

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-11, 14-15, 30)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (3), H 1917.5 (10-11)

Dukes: H 1574 (3-4)

Dwellings

SEE ALSO Buildings and structures

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Dynasties: H 1574

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-2)

- E -

Earls: H 1574 (3-4)

Early cities

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Early printed books: H 1576 (4)

Early works: H 1576

Early works to 1800 as a subdivision: H 1576

Commentaries: H 1435 (4)

Earthquakes

Establishing individual earthquakes: H 1560 (5)

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

East Germany

SEE Germany

Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Not treated as geographic headings: H 830 (9)

Not used as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)

Ecological stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Economic conditions as a subdivision: H 1578

Period subdivisions: H 1578 (2)

Editions: H 175

Deleting –**Addresses, essays, lectures** from earlier editions of a work: H 1210

Deleting –**Collected works** from earlier editions of a work: H 1425

Treatment of a work containing commentary as an edition or commentary:

H 1435 (1)

Editions of visual materials: H 2230 (3)

Education as a subdivision: H 1579

Contrasted with –**Training of:** H 2217 (2)

Educational evaluation: H 1591 (2)

Educational institutions, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1151

Yearbooks: H 2400

Educational institutions, Types of

Pattern heading: H 1151.5

[. . .], **Effect of [. . .] on**

Discontinued: H 1580 (2)

Effect of [. . .] on as a subdivision

Free-floating when established under pattern headings: H 1580 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 1580 (2)

Effect on [. . .] as a subdivision

Not used: H 1580 (1)

Electronic serials: H 1580.5

Embassies

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Emigrants

SEE Immigrants

Emigration and immigration: H 1581

Emigration and immigration as a subdivision: H 1581

Emigration and immigration–Biography as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Emigration and immigration–Government policy as a subdivision: H 1581 (2)

Emigration policy

SEE **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Empires

Assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)

Enactments, Legislative: H 1715

England

Contrasted with **Great Britain:** H 955 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 955

Law cataloging: H 955

England (*Continued*)

Qualification of geographic headings

Use of counties to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

English drama

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

English language

SEE ALSO **Translating** as a subdivision

–**Dictionaries:** H 1540 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

–**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540 (1)

Period subdivisions: H 1154 (1)

–**Terms and phrases:** H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187 (2)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (1)

English literature

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Epidemics

Formulating headings: H 1592

Eruptions of volcanoes

Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

Establishing subject headings

SEE Subject heading proposals

"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Estates

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Estonia: H 1023 (2-4)

Estuaries

Formulating headings: H 800 (6), H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Ethics, Professional

SEE **Professional ethics**

Ethnic groups

SEE ALSO Ancient peoples

Clans

Ethnic groups in the United States

Indians

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Biography: H 1330 (3)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

–**Correspondence:** H 1480 (2)

–**Diaries:** H 1538 (1)

Ethnic groups (*Continued*)

–**Directories:** H 1558 (1)

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1103

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with ethnic qualifiers:
H 1100

–**Government relations:** H 1942 (2)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367

Immigrants: H 1581 (3, 5)

–**Languages–Texts:** H 2190 (2)

Music: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Philosophy: H 1929

–**Politics and government:** H 1942 (2)

–**Psychological testing:** H 2186

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

System of law: H 1718

–**Treaties:** H 2227 (1)

Ethnic groups in the United States: H 1919.5 (3-4)

SEE ALSO Ethnic groups

Newspapers: H 1920

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

Ethnic qualifiers for subject headings

SEE Subject heading qualifiers–Ethnic qualifiers

Ethnic studies: H 2110 (1)

Ethnological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Ethnomusicological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Evaluation: H 1591

Evaluation as a subdivision: H 1591

Events

SEE ALSO specific types of events

Capitalization: Appendix B (6-7)

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dates in subdivisions for specific events: H 1078

Drama: H 1780 (4)

Established as name or subject headings: H 405 (6, 11), H 1592

Established as subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 1592 (6)

Fiction: H 1790 (5)

Formulating subject headings as subdivisions: H 1592 (6-10)

Formulating subject headings in phrase form: H 1592 (3-5)

–**Personal narratives:** H 1928 (1)

Poetry: H 1800 (4)

Events (*Continued*)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075

Subject headings to bring out subordinate jurisdictions when event headings are formulated as subdivisions under larger jurisdictions: H 1592 (9-10)

Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Examinations as a subdivision: H 2186 (2)

Excavations (Archaeology): H 1225 (3)

Excerpts, Arranged as a subdivision: H 1160 (2), H 1917.5 (28)

Exhibition buildings

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Geographic qualifier: H 1334 (5)

Exhibition catalogs

Artistic photography: H 1255 (3-4)

Exhibitions: H 1593

Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 1592 (2)

Individual named exhibitions: H 1593 (2-3)

Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593

–**Catalogs** not used: H 1593 (1)

Expeditions, Military

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Expeditions, Scientific

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Experiment stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Exploration, History of

SEE **Discoveries (in geography)**

Discovery and exploration

Exploration, Space: H 1564 (2)

Exploring expeditions as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1564 (1)

Explosions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Expositions

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Express highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Extinct cities (pre-1500)

SEE ALSO Cities

Contrasted with archaeological sites: H 715 (3)

–**Description and travel** not used: H 1530 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10), H 690 (1), H 715 (1)

Extinct cities (pre-1500) (*Continued*)
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)
Regions surrounding: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)
Subject heading proposals: H 715
(Extinct city) as a qualifier: H 715 (2, 4)

- F -

Fables: H 1627 (4)
Facsimiles as a subdivision: H 1595, H 1855 (5, 9, 11, 13, 15, 16)
Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1-2); H 1855
Facsimiles of maps: H 1595 (2)
Factories
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Fairgrounds
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
Fairs
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)
Fairy tales: H 1627 (4)
Families
 SEE Family names
Families, Royal
 SEE Royal houses
Family as a subdivision: H 1631 (6)
Family history
 SEE Genealogy
Family names: H 1631
 Capitalization: Appendix B (5-6)
 –**Directories**: H 1558 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
 –**Museums, relics, etc.**: H 1916 (2)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1631 (3-4)
 Aristocratic or noble families: H 1574 (3-4)
 Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)
Famines
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Farms
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)

Feasts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Feature films: H 1913 (3)

Federal Republic of Germany

SEE Germany

Ferry buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Festivals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festivals, Folk

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festschriften: H 1600

Fiction: H 1790

SEE ALSO Biographical fiction

Historical fiction

Juvenile fiction

Fiction as a subdivision: H 1790

Animals: H 1720 (1)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Fiction films: H 1913 (1)

Fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610

SEE ALSO Comic characters

Legendary characters

Collections of fiction featuring a character: H 1790 (2)

Criticism of fiction about a character: H 1790 (4)

Establishing individual characters: H 1610 (1-2)

Individual works of fiction: H 1610 (2-3)

Film catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Contrasted with **-Indexes:** H 1670 (1)

Films: H 1913; H 2230

SEE ALSO Juvenile films

Finance as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

Finance, Personal as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Fine art

SEE Art

Fire stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Fires

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

First order political divisions of countries
 SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries

Fish hatcheries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Fishes
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147

Fleets
 Use of **—Regimental histories:** H 1995

Floods
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Folk drama: H 1627 (4)

Folk festivals and celebrations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Folk literature: H 1627 (1, 4, 5)
 Translations: H 1627 (5)

Folk music: H 1917
 Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folk poetry
 Ethnic qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (1)

Folk songs
 Language of text: H 1916.3 (2,5), H 1917 (1)
 Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folklore: H 1627
 Collections of folklore texts: H 1627 (2)
 —History and criticism not used: H 1627 (7)
 Works about folklore: H 1627 (2)

Folklore as a subdivision: **H 1627**, H 1720 (1)
 Not used under inherently folkloric topics: H 1627 (4)

Foot
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Forecasting: H 1628
 Subdivision preferred over phrase headings: H 1628 (1)

Forecasting as a subdivision: H 1628

Forecasts as a subdivision
 Usage under centuries: H 1628 (2)

Foreign countries as a subdivision
 Nationalities: H 1919.5 (2, 4)
 [. . .] **in foreign countries** discontinued: H 1919.5 (1)

Foreign influences as a subdivision: H 1675 (3-4)

Foreign language teaching films: H 2230 (2)

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

SEE ALSO Artificial languages

French language

Romance languages

Translating as a subdivision

–**Acronyms:** H 1206.5

–**Dictionaries:** H 1540 (1)

–**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1154

Qualifying subject headings by languages: H 320

UF references: H 373 (4)

–**Readers:** H 1975 (1)

–**Study and teaching:** H 2110 (3)

–**Terms and phrases:** H 1540 (1)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187 (2)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (1)

Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Capitalization: Appendix B (10), H 690 (7)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C

Establishing subject headings in foreign languages

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals–Use of vernacular" as a subtopic under
specific topics

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2)

Geographic headings: H 690 (4-7)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2, 7)

Topical headings: H 315

Parallel Arabic/Persian vernacular subject headings: H 181

Parallel CJK vernacular subject headings: H 182

UF references in foreign languages: H 373 (3)

Foreign population as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Foreign public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955 (4)

Foreign relations as a subdivision: H 1629

–**History**–[*period subdivision*] not used: H 1629 (1)

Use of chronological subdivisions: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–[*dates*]: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–**Treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Foreign terms

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Forest districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forest reserves
SEE Reserves

Forests
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)

Forests (Administrative agencies)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forks of rivers: H 800 (5-6)

Form/genre headings
 Moving image works: H 1913
 Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3)
 Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Form subdivisions: H 180 (6), H 1075 (2-3)
 Commentaries: H 1435 (4)
 Literature about music: H 1160 (3-4), H 1916.3 (6, 8)
 Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 6)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (1, 3, 6), H 2075
 Musical presentation or format: H 250 (9-10), H 1160 (6-8)
 Use of subfield code "v": H 1075 (3)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (2-4)

Fortresses (Structures): H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Forts
SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
 Military installations, Active
 Military installations, Inactive
 –**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)
 –**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Fossils: H 1332 (7)
 Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Founders of religions
 Biography: H 1330 (4)
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
 Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

Fountains
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Free-floating subdivisions: H 1095
SEE ALSO Free-floating terms phrases
 Subdivisions
 Broader terms: H 370 (7)

Free-floating subdivisions (*Continued*)

"General see also" references: **H 371** (2, 3) H 1146 (1)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Subdividing by place: H 860

Used under:

Bodies of water, etc.: H 1145.5

Classes of persons: H 1100

Corporate bodies: H 1105

Ethnic groups: H 1103

Family names: H 1120

Musical compositions: H 1160

Musical instruments: H 1161

Names of literary authors: H 1110

Names of persons: H 1110

Names of places: H 1140

Nationalities: H 1103

Pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Rivers: H 1145.5

Free-floating terms and phrases: **H 362**, H 1140 (12)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790 (1-3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[. . .] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)**, H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

French language

SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Funds

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Funeral homes

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

- G -

GACs

SEE Geographic area codes

Galaxies
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Galleries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Game preserves
SEE Reserves

Games (Events)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Gangs
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

Gardens
SEE ALSO Botanical gardens
 Zoological gardens
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Gates: H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Gautama Buddha
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980

Gazetteers: H 1630

Genealogy: H 1631
 Census publications: H 1366 (3)
 Source materials: H 1845
 Headings requiring [*place*]-**Genealogy** as an additional heading: H 1845 (2)
 Subdivisions under place names used for genealogical source materials:
 H 1845 (1)

Genealogy as a subdivision: H 1631 (1-2), H 1845 (1-2)
 Census publications: H 1366 (3)

Genealogy–Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

Genealogy–Methodology as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

General see also references: H 371
 Changing an existing subject authority record: H 195 (2)
 Contrasted with broader terms: H 371 (3)
 Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5, 15)
 Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5, 22-24)
 Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2)
 Pattern headings as examples in general see also references: H 371 (9),
 H 1146 (1, 2)
 When to establish: H 370 (4), **H 371** (3)

General see references: H 200 (5, 15), **H 374**

Genre/form headings

Moving image works: H 1913

Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3)

Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Genres, Literary

SEE ALSO specific literary genres

Period subdivisions used under: H 1156 (1-2)

Geographic area codes

Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055 (2)

Congo: H 928 (3)

Core level records: H 170 (2)

Croatia: H 1055 (2)

Families: H 1631 (6)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (5)

Former Yugoslav republics: H 1055 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980 (5)

Genealogical works: H 1631 (6)

Golan Heights: H 980 (5)

Hong Kong: H 978 (2)

Jazz: H 1916.5 (4)

Jerusalem: H 980 (5)

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Microforms: H 1893

Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230 (3)

Palestine: H 980 (5)

Popular music: H 1916.5 (4)

Serbia: H 1055 (2)

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Slovenia: H 1055 (2)

Soviet Union: H 1023 (5)

Vatican City: H 1045 (1)

Visual materials: H 2230 (3)

West Bank: H 980 (5)

Yugoslavia: H 1055 (2)

Geographic headings, Jurisdictional

SEE Geographic name headings

Geographic headings, Non-jurisdictional

SEE Geographic subject headings

Geographic name headings

SEE ALSO Geographic subject headings

Place names

First order political divisions of countries: H 713

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision information in name authority records: H 835

Linear name changes in political jurisdictions

Recording subject usage information in name authority records: H 708

Use of latest name: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710

Proposing 781 fields for name authority records: H 835 (2-3)

Splits of jurisdictions into multiple entities: H 710

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Abbreviations: H 810 (3, 8-11)

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2-6)

Deletion of generic terms in headings for regions: H 760 (2)

Deletion of qualifiers in geographic subdivision: H 830 (7-8)

Entities in cities: H 810 (5)

Extinct cities: H 715 (2)

Islands: H 807 (1-3)

Region headings: H 760 (2)

Deleting generic terms from qualifiers: H 760 (2)

Rivers: H 800 (1-3)

RLIN CJK records: H 182 (4)

Geographic regions

SEE Regions, Geographic

Geographic subdivision information

In name authority records: H 835

In subject authority records: H 364, H 836

Geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1075 (1)

Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364

Corporate bodies: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Proposals to subdivide by place: H 475 (1-2)

Dividing topical subdivisions by place: H 860

Exceptions: H 830 (5-7)

History of geographic subdivision practice: H 830 (1-2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Jazz and popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2-3)

Limit of two levels of geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)

Music, General: H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Geographic subdivisions (*Continued*)

- Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (1, 4-7)
- Musical compositions: H 250 (11), H 1160 (2), H 1916.5 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 4)
- Musical instruments: H 1917 (1), H 1918 (3-4)
 - Brands and models: H 1918 (5)
- Parks as geographic subdivisions: H 1925 (6)
- RLIN Arabic/Persian records: H 181 (3)
- RLIN CJK records: H 182 (3)
- Subdivisions
 - Further dividing by place: H 860
- Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
- Subject headings
 - Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364
 - Dividing to the city level: **H 832**, H 1560
 - Proposals to divide existing headings: H 193 (1), **H 194**
 - Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
- Subject usage information
 - Name authority records: H 835
 - Subject authority records: H 836

Geographic subject headings

- SEE ALSO* Geographic name headings
 - Geographic qualifiers
 - Place names
 - types of geographic features

Abbreviations: H 690 (6)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 690 (6)

Capitalization: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)

Free-floating subdivisions

Used under

Bodies of water, streams, etc: H 1145.5

Names of places: H 1140

Free-floating terms and phrases: H 362, H 1140 (6)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), H 790 (1-3), H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[. . .] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)** H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3), H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subject headings (*Continued*)
 Subject heading proposals: H 690
 Authority research: H 690 (2-3)
 BGN decisions: H 690 (2)
 Broader terms: H 690 (8)
 English vs. vernacular forms: H 690 (4-5)
 UF references: H 690 (8)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)
 Transliteration: H 690 (6)
 Used as topical subdivisions
 Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
Geographical names [i.e. **Names, Geographical** as a subject heading]
 SEE **Names, Geographical**
Geography as a subdivision: H 1530 (1)
Geologic basins
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
Georgia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)
German Democratic Republic
 SEE Germany
German Federal Republic
 SEE Germany
Germany: H 945
Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)
Gods
 SEE Deities
 Greek and Roman gods
Golan Heights: H 980
Golf courses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Government agencies
 Catalogs of publications: H 1965
Government policy as a subdivision: H 1642
Government publications: H 1643
 Publishers' catalogs: H 1965
Grain elevators
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
Grasslands
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
Graveyards
 SEE Cemeteries

Great Britain: H 955

Assignment of constituent countries directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)

Geographic subdivision through names of constituent countries: H 955

Geographic subdivision in law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1, 8)

Use of county or region names to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

Great Britain–Colonies

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149.5

Greek and Roman gods: H 1636

Groups of islands

SEE Islands

Groups of languages, Subject headings for

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Groups of persons

SEE Classes of persons

Guidebooks as a subdivision: H 1645

Gymnasiums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

- H -

Haiti

As a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Halfway houses

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hamlet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1646

SEE ALSO **Guidebooks** as a subdivision

Tables as a subdivision

Genealogical works: H 1631 (2)

Harvard University

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1151

Hawaii: H 975

Use as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6), H 975

Hazardous waste sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Heads of state

SEE Rulers and statesmen

Hearing impaired, Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)

Heart

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Helplines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Herbarium as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Herbariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hierarchical references

Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)

"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)

Geographic names: H 690 (8)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language
qualifiers: H 320 (2)

[topic]–**[place]** references: H 375

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

Highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Highways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Hijackings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Hispaniola

Not used as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Historic districts

In cities

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Not in cities

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Historic kingdoms

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3, 6)

Historic sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925

Historical events

SEE Events

Historical fiction: H 1790 (3)

History

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

History and criticism as a subdivision

Comic strips and single panel cartoons

Not used: H 1430 (1)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2, 5-7)

Not used under **Folklore**: H 1627 (7)

Legends and romances: H 1795 (3)

Liturgical texts: H 2190 (3)

Music headings

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (2)

Literature and other materials about music: H 1160 (8), H 1916.3 (6)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (4)

Not used under the heading **Musical instruments** or under headings for specific instruments: H 1917 (5)

Vocal music texts: H 2190 (2)

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Sermons: H 2032 (4)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075 (3)

History as a subdivision: H 1647

–**Bombardment, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

–**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Chronological subdivisions: H 1647 (2-3)

–**Destruction, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (5)

Philosophy headings: H 1647 (5)

–**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Subdivisions not further subdivided by –**History**: H 1647 (6)

History–Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

History, Constitutional: H 1465 (5)

History–Sources as a subdivision: H 2080

Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 1480 (2)

Homes and haunts as a subdivision

Works about buildings: H 1334 (9)

Homilies

SEE Sermons

Hong Kong (China): H 978
Hospitals
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Hotels
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Hotlines
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Houses: H 1334 (1)
Houses, Noble
 SEE Noble houses
Houses, Royal
 SEE Royal houses
Hurricanes
 Establishing individual hurricanes: H 1560 (4)
Husbands of famous women
 Biography: H 1330 (4)

- I -

Illumination artists
 SEE Manuscript illuminators
Illumination of manuscripts: H 1855 (2-9, 15-18)
Illustrations as a subdivision: H 1659, H 1935 (2)
 Contrasted with –**Pictorial works**: H 1659 (2)
 Manuscripts: H 1855 (3-4, 6-7, 15-18)
Illustrators
 Artists as illustrators: H 1250 (10)
Imaginary persons
 SEE Fictitious characters
Immigrants: H 1581 (2-3, 5)
 Biography: H 1581 (3)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100
 Geographic subdivision: H 1581 (2)
 Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3,5)
Immigrants' descendants
 Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3)
Immigration
 SEE Emigration and immigration
Immigration policy
 SEE **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Immigration stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Imprints as a subdivision: H 1660

In art as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (1); H 1935 (2)

[. . .] **in art**: H 362 (1), H 910 (1), H 1935 (2)

[. . .] **in** [. . .] headings

[*class of persons*] **in** [*discipline*]: H 360

[*nationality*] **in** [*place*]

Replaced by [*nationality*] (*May Subd Geog*): H 1919.5 (1)

[*place*] **in** [. . .]: H 910

[*topic*] **in** [*topic*]

Broader terms: H 370 (9)

Contrasted with parenthetical qualifiers: H 357 (2)

In literature as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (2); H 1780 (3); H 1790 (4); H 1800 (3)

[. . .] **in literature**: H 362 (1), H 910 (2)

In motion pictures as a subdivision: H 910 (2)

[. . .] **in motion pictures**: H 910 (2)

[. . .] (**in religion, folklore, etc.**)

Discontinued: H 1998 (1)

In-service training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

[. . .] **in textbooks**: H 2187 (2)

[. . .] **in the Bible**: H 1295

Incunabula

SEE Early works

Indexes

Treated as supplementary works: H 2145

Indexes as a subdivision: **H 1670**

Indian reservations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Indians

SEE ALSO Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Folklore: H 1627 (3, 6)

–**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)

Indigenous tribes of the United States

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

–**Music**: H 1917 (2)

–**Philosophy**: H 1929

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

–**Wars**

As broader term for battles: H 1285 (3)

Indians of the United States, Newspapers of: H 1920 (2)

Indigenous peoples: H 1103 (1)
 Indigenous tribes of the United States
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)
 Indirect subdivision
 SEE Geographic subdivisions
 Individual persons
 SEE Names of persons
 Individual works of art: H 1250 (12)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
 Industries
 Based on products: H 1673
 –**Directories:** H 1558 (3)
 Pattern headings: H 1153
Influence as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), **H 1675** (1)
 [. . .], **Influence of:** H 1580 (1)
Influence of as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
 [. . .], **Influence of [. . .] on:** H 1580 (1)
Influence on [. . .] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
 [. . .] **influences** as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (2-3)
 Broader terms: H 1675 (3)
 Folklore materials: H 1627 (3)
Information services: H 1675.5
Information services as a subdivision: H 1675.5
 Ingredients for cooking: H 1475 (2)
 Establishing headings: H 1475 (4)
 Initial articles in subject headings
 SEE Articles in the initial position in subject headings
 Initialisms: Appendix A (2)
Inquisition: H 1676
Inspection as a subdivision: H 1676.5
 Institutions, Educational
 SEE Educational institutions, Individual
 Educational institutions, Types of
Instruction and study as a subdivision: H 2110 (3)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 1161
 Instructional materials, Music: H 1916.3 (3, 7)
 Instrumental ensembles in music form/genre headings: H 250 (1, 7), H 1917.5 (8, 18-25)
 Instruments, Musical
 SEE Musical instruments

Insulin

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149

Insurrections

Pattern heading: H 1200

Intelligence testing as a subdivision: H 2186 (1)

Interchanges, Express highway: H 2098 (3)

Internal migration

SEE **Migration, Internal**

International agency publications: H 1643 (1)

International bodies of water

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (7)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

International conventions (Treaties): H 2227 (4)

International organizations

Regions based on: H 760 (4)

International relations: H 1942 (1)

Internet resources

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Interviews as a subdivision: H 1678

Invasions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Inverted word order

Topical subject headings: H 306

Islam: H 1680

[. . .], **Islamic:** H 1680

Islamic law

Dividing headings geographically: H 1718

Islands: H 807

Buildings and structures on: H 1334 (4)

Entities on: H 810 (5-6), H 807 (9)

Established as name headings if jurisdictional: H 807 (1)

Established as subject headings if non-jurisdictional: H 405 (11), H 807 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers: H 807 (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (6-9)

Subject usage information

In name authority records: H 835 (1-3)

In subject authority records: H 836

Parks coextensive with islands: H 1925 (5)

Islands (*Continued*)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on islands: H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 807 (1-5)

Islands of the Caribbean

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

- J -

Japanese RLIN records

SEE RLIN CJK subject headings

Jazz: **H 1916.5**, H 1917.5 (12)

Jerusalem: H 980

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Metropolitan Area: H 790 (1, 3)

Jesuits

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1186

Jesus Christ

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

–**Trial**: H 2228 (2)

Jewish as a qualifier: H 306 (1); H 320 (1)

Jewish way of life: H 2015.5 (1)

Jurisdictional mergers and splits: H 710

Jurisdictions

SEE Geographic name headings

Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Juvenile dictionaries

SEE **Dictionaries, Juvenile** as a subdivision

Juvenile drama: H 1690 (2), H 1780 (2)

Juvenile fiction: H 1690 (2), H 1790 (2)

Juvenile films: H 1690 (2-3)

Juvenile literature as a subdivision: H 1690

–**Juvenile literature–Bibliography**: H 1690 (4)

–**Periodicals–Juvenile literature**: H 1927 (1)

Juvenile materials: H 180 (2), **H 1690**

Juvenile poetry: H 1690 (2), H 1800 (2)

Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Juvenile sound recordings: H 1690 (2-3)

Juvenile textbooks: H 1690 (1), H 2187 (3)

- K -

Kazakstan: H 1023 (2-4)
Kingdoms
 SEE Historic kingdoms
Kings and rulers as a subdivision: H 1574 (2-3, 5)
 SEE ALSO Rulers and statesmen
Koran: H 1300
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
Korean RLIN records
 SEE RLIN CJK subject headings
Kyrgyzstan: H 1023 (4)

- L -

Labor laws and legislation
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154.5
Laboratories
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Lakes
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
 Geographic qualifiers: H 810
 Lakes in cities: H 810 (5)
Land grants
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
Land vehicles
 Pattern heading: H 1195
Landslides
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Language dictionaries: H 1540
Language of vocal texts: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (2, 5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)
Language qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2)
Language teachers
 -**Training of:** H 2217 (1)
Languages
 SEE **English language**
 Foreign languages, Subject headings for
 French language
 Romance languages

Languages, Computer

SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Latest name of political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Latin America: H 985

Latvia: H 1023 (2-4)

Law and legislation as a subdivision: H 1705

Law, Constitutional: H 1465 (2-3)

Law headings

SEE Legal headings

Law, Systems of: H 1718

LC data base

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

LC patterns for subject heading proposals

Citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18), H 202 (1-2)

LCSH

SEE Subject authority records

Legal headings

SEE ALSO **Cases** as a subdivision

Digests as a subdivision

Law and legislation as a subdivision

Legal research as a subdivision

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Safety regulations as a subdivision

Treaties

Trials

Broader terms

Headings qualified by legal systems: H 370 (10)

Great Britain as geographic subdivision: H 955 (2-3)

–**History–Sources**: H 2080 (4)

–**Legal research**: H 1710

–**Legal status, laws, etc.**: H 1705

Pattern heading: H 1154.5

–**Sources**: H 2080 (4)

Systems of law: H 1718

–**Terminology**: H 2184 (2)

Legal materials: H 1705-H1715

Legal research as a subdivision: H 1710

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision: H 1705

Legendary characters: H 1627 (6), H 1795
 SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
 Established as subject headings: H 1795 (1)
 Subject headings proposals: H 1795 (1)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)
 Legendary objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)
Legends: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (2)
 SEE ALSO **Romances**
 History and criticism: H 1795 (3)
 Legends involving religious objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)
 Qualifying by names of religions: H 1627 (6)
 Legends, Medieval
 SEE **Legends**
 Legends as a subdivision
Legends and stories as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1720 (1)
Legends as a subdivision: H 1627 (3-4, 6), H 1795 (2-3)
 SEE ALSO **Romances** as a subdivision
 Legislation: H 1715
 Legislative enactments: H 1715
 Legislative bodies
 Pattern heading: H 1155
Legislative history as a subdivision: H 1715 (3)
 Legislative histories: H 1715 (3)
 Letters, Foreign: Appendix C
 Letters as a literary genre: H 1480 (3)
 Letters of individual persons
 SEE Correspondence of individual persons
 Libraries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Library as a subdivision: H 1361 (1), H 1427 (1), H 1855 (8)
 Library catalogs: H 1361
 SEE ALSO Audiovisual materials–Catalogs
 Manuscript collections–Catalogs
 Microform catalogs
 Union catalogs
 [*specific form of library material*] as a subdivision
 Periodicals: H 1361 (1)
 Library districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
Library of Congress Subject Headings
 SEE Subject authority records

Librettos as a subdivision: H 1160 (7), H 2190 (2)

Lighthouses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Literary authors, Groups of
 Pattern heading: H 1155.2
 Qualifying by ethnic group: H 351 (2)
 Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)

Literary authors, Individual
 "Base heading" for authors who write under various names: H 430 (3)
 Biography: H 1330 (2)
 Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
 –**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)
 –**Sources**: H 2080 (3)
 Translations: H 2220

Literary collections as a subdivision
 Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)
 Place names: H 910 (2)

Literary prizes: H 1265

Literary works, Individual
SEE ALSO Literatures
 specific literary genres
 Entered under author
 Pattern heading: H 1155.6
 Entered under title:
 Pattern heading: H 1155.8
 Manuscripts: H 1855 (5-6)

Literature
 Classification numbers in subject authority records for literature headings: H 365 (2)
 Collections from one place in two or more languages: H 1828
 General overview of subject heading assignment: H 1775

Literature, English
SEE **English literature**

Literature, Folk
SEE Folk literature

Literature, Juvenile
SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Literature teachers
 –**Training of**: H 2217 (1)

Literatures

SEE ALSO Literary works, Individual
specific literatures and genres

Pattern heading: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

–**Sources:** H 2080 (3)

Translations: H 2220

Literatures as a subdivision: H 1828

Lithuania: H 1023 (2-4)

Liturgical texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Liturgical works

SEE Religious works

Liturgy as a subdivision: H 1855 (4, 13-18)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Local history: H 1845

Headings requiring [*place*]-[*topic*] as an additional heading: H 1845 (3)

Subdivisions under place names for local history materials: H 1845 (1)

Local subdivision of subject headings

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Locks (Hydraulic engineering)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

London, England:

Buildings and structures in: H 1334 (5)

Longitudinal studies as a subdivision: H 1848

- M -

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055

Machine translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (2)

Malay as an adjective: H 987 (1-2)

Malaya: H 987

Malayan as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Malaysia: H 987

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9)

Malaysian as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Manners and customs: H 2057

Manors

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Mansions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Manuals, Amateurs'

SEE **Amateurs' manuals** as a subdivision

Manuscript collections: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Catalogs: H 1361 (4-6)

Manuscript illuminators: H 1855 (9)

Manuscripts, Facsimile editions of

SEE Facsimiles of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Illumination of

SEE Illumination of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Individual: H 1855

Text with important illustrations: H 1855 (15-18)

Manuscripts, Music: H 1595 (2)

Map collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Maps: H 1865

–**Early works to 1800**: H 1576 (1)

Facsimiles: H 1595 (2)

MARC tagging

Subject authority records: H 200

Market buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Marketing as a subdivision: H 1870

Markets

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Mass media

–**Reviews**: H 2021 (2)

Massacres

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Materials

Pattern heading: H 1158

(*May Subd Geog*)

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Medals: H 1265

Medical statistics: H 2095 (1-2)

Medicine, Popular: H 1943.5 (1)

Medieval cities

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Medieval legends

SEE **Legends**

Legends as a subdivision

Medium of performance of musical works: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)
Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)

Meetings
SEE Congresses

Mental health as a subdivision: H 1890 (1)

Mental health services as a subdivision: H 1890 (2)

Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710

Metals
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158

Methodology as a subdivision
Forecasting: H 1628 (1-2)
Genealogy: H 1631 (2)

Methods as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3), H 1140 (6)
Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Microform catalogs: H 1361 (3-4)
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Microforms: H 1893

Migration, Internal: H 1581 (4)

Migration, Return: H 1581 (4)

Military engagements
Formulating headings: H 1592

Military expeditions
Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Military installations, Active
Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Military installations, Inactive
Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Military invasions
SEE Invasions

Military occupations
Formulating headings: H 1592

Military raids
SEE Raids

Military relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Military services
Pattern headings: H 1159
Regimental histories: H 1995

Military units
Regimental histories: H 1995

Mine buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Mines
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Miniature books: H 1895
 –**Specimens:** H 1895

Miniature paintings of manuscripts
 SEE Illumination of manuscripts

Mining districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Mints
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Miscellanea as a subdivision: H 1910

Model headings
 SEE Pattern headings

Moldova: H 1023 (2-4)

Monasteries
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Monastic orders
 Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)
 –**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)
 Monastic and religious life: H 2015.5 (1)
 Pattern heading: H 1186

Montenegro: H 1055

Months, Special: H 1592

Monuments: H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1334.5 (1)
 Subject heading proposals for national monuments: H 1925

Monuments as a subdivision
 Individual persons: H 1334 (10)

Moon
 SEE Celestial bodies

Moral and ethical aspects as a subdivision: H 1949, H 1998 (4)

Morgues
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Mosques
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Motels
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Motion pictures: H 2230
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Mountain ranges
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

Mountains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Multifaceted careers, Persons with

Biography: H 1330 (3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110 (2-3)

Multilingual dictionaries: H 1540

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090

Religion headings: H 1998, H 2015

Subject heading proposals: H 1090 (2)

Religion headings: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Museums: H 1916

Established as name headings: H 405 (8), H 1916

Museums as a subdivision: H 1916 (1)

Music

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Popular music

Accompaniment in form/genre headings: H 250 (8-9), H 1917.5 (10, 13, 15, 21-22, 24-25, 27, 31, 34-38)

Authority records: H 250, H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 18, 21-23, 28-30, 33, 37)

By individual composers: H 1438

Common concepts in subject headings: H 1916.3 (2-9)

Dance music headings: H 250 (5)

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917

For occasions (religious seasons, holidays, festivals, etc.): H 1160 (5), H 1916.3 (2, 4)

Form/genre headings: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3 (3), **H 1917.5**

General: H 1916.3

Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)

–**Instruction and study:** H 1160 (8), H 2110 (3)

Instructional materials: H 1916.3 (3, 7), H 1918 (9-10)

Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Literature and other materials about: H 1160 (3-4), H 1161, H 1916.3 (6-8), H 1917, H 1918 (9-10)

Medium of performance in headings: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)

Pattern headings

For free floating subdivisions

Musical compositions: H 1160, H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9, 11), H 1161

For musical compositions: H 250 (7-11)

Music (*Continued*)

Qualifiers for music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (4), H 1917.5 (11-17, 24-25, 29-35, 37-38)

Subject heading assignment: H 250 (5), H 1160, H 1161, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (3-9), H 1917 (1-5), H 1917.5 (9, 11, 21-22, 24-25, 27-38), H 1918 (6-10), H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (1-6), H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 37), H 1918

Music, Folk

SEE Folk music

Music, Popular: H 1916.5

Music, Vocal

SEE Vocal music headings

Music and songs

SEE **Songs and music** as a subdivision: H 2075

Music and the war [revolution, etc.] as a subdivision: H 2075 (4)

(Music) as a qualifier: H 250 (5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1918 (3, 6)

Music as a subdivision: H 1917 (1-2)

Music halls

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Music heading authority records: H 250

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" under Music

Music manuscripts: H 1595 (2)

Music of ethnic groups: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Music of national groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Music of religious groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Musical compositions

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Music

Popular music

Pattern heading: H 1160

Musical format subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (6-8), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

(Musical instrument) as a qualifier: H 1918 (3, 7)

Musical instrument collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Musical instruments: H 1918

Brands and models: H 1918 (8-10)

–**Catalogs and collections:** H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Ethnic and national: H 1917 (1, 5)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5-17, 20, 24)

Keyboard: H 1917.5 (9-10, 12-15, 21, 34, 36)

Non-musical objects used as: H 1918 (6)

Musical instruments (*Continued*)

Number of the same solo instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-17)

Order, in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27, 31, 35)

Parts of instruments and accessories: H 1918 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1161

Percussion: H 1917.5 (9, 16-17, 22)

Qualifiers: H 1917.5 (3-6, 15-16), H 1918 (3, 6-8)

Subject heading assignment: H 1917 (1-5), H 1918 (6-10)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (5-7, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 30, 33, 37),
H 1918

Unspecified: H 1917.5 (9-10, 15)

Musical presentation subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (5-7), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Musical settings as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 2075 (1)

Musical style: H 250 (1-3), H 1160 (5), H 1161 (2), H 1916.3 (5), H 1916.5 (1-2), H 1917 (1, 3)

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Musicians

Composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Muslim as an adjective: H 1680

Mutinies

Formulating headings: H 1592

Mythological characters: H 1795 (2)

Mythology as a subdivision: H 1998 (4)

- N -

Name as a subdivision: H 1919 (1)

Name authority record proposals made by subject catalogers

SEE Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers

Name authority records

SEE ALSO Name headings

AACR2 coding: H 405 (3-4), H 430 (1-2)

Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Citing name authority records in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Corporate bodies

Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Name changes: H 460

Provisional, Name headings coded: H 436

Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation: H 405 (4)

Name authority records (*Continued*)

Subject usage information: H 432, H 708

Geographic subdivision information: H 835

Validity of headings for subject use: H 430

Name changes

Corporate bodies: H 460

Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Name headings

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Name authority records

Abbreviations: Appendix A

Capitalization: Appendix B (1)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C (1)

Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

"General see also" references to types of name headings: H 371 (2, 4)

Name changes

Corporate bodies: H 460

Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Punctuation: Appendix D (3-4)

Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)

Validity for subject use: H 430

Name headings, Provisional: H 436

Name-title subject headings

SEE ALSO Uniform titles as subject headings

Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438 (2)

–**History** not used: H 1647 (2)

–**Indexes**: H 1670 (2-3)

Named entities

Buildings and structures: H 1334

Established as name or subject headings: H 405

Events: H 1592

Geographic entities: H 690

Parks: H 1925

–**Songs and music**: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), **H 2075**

Street and roads: H 2098

Strikes and lockouts: H 2100

Names, Biological

SEE Biological names

Names, Family

SEE Family names

Names, Geographical: H 1630

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings

Names, Personal

SEE Names of persons

Names as a subdivision: H 1919

Names of corporate bodies

SEE Corporate bodies
Geographic name headings
Name headings

Names of families

SEE Family names

Names of legislative acts: H 1715

Names of persons

SEE ALSO Correspondence of individual persons
Name authority records
Name headings
Literary authors, Individual

Assignment as subject heading: H 1110 (1)

Bibliographies: H 1322

Biography: H 1330

Assignment as subject heading to non-biographical works: H 1330 (5)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Music: H 1438, H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1110 (2-3)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

–**Museums:** H 1916 (2)

Named events focused on an individual person: H 1592 (6)

Pictorial works: H 1935 (2)

–**Sources:** H 2080 (3)

Names of places

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings

Dictionaries (Gazetteers): H 1630

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

NARS

SEE Name authority records

National monuments

SEE Monuments

National parks: H 1925 (2-4)

Nationalities: H 1919.5

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3, 7)

–**Foreign countries:** H 1919.5 (2, 4)

Free-floating subdivisions under: **H 1103**, H 1919.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with national
qualifiers: H 1100

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 350

National and ethnic qualifiers not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 1919.5 (1)

Nationalities, Music of

SEE Music of national groups

Nationalities in the United States

SEE Ethnic groups in the United States

Nationality qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Native Americans

SEE Indians

Natural disasters

SEE Disasters

specific types of disasters

Natural features in cities

Qualifying subject headings: H 810 (5)

Natural history collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Natural language

Topical subject headings: H 306

Natural objects

–**Catalogs and collections:** H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Nature conservation areas

SEE Parks

New subject heading proposals

SEE Subject heading proposals

New York (N.Y.): H 990

City sections, boroughs, counties: H 990 (2)

Metropolitan Area: H 362 (1), H 790 (1,3), H 990 (1)

Region: H 790 (4)

New Zealand

Abbreviation as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Newspapers

–**Directories:** H 1558 (4)

–**Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews:** H 2021 (2)

Newspapers as a subdivision: H 1920

Newspapers about specific places: H 1920 (1)

Newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States: H 1920

Newspapers of Indians of the United States: H 1920 (2)

Newspapers on special topics: H 1920

Night clubs

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Noble houses

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (4)

Non-English languages

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in
Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Non-fiction films: H 1913 (1)

Non-fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Non-free-floating subdivisions

SEE Subdivisions

Non-jurisdictional corporate body headings

SEE Corporate bodies

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings

SEE Geographic subject headings

Non-jurisdictional islands

SEE Islands

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230

"Nonprint" headings: H 1332 (5)

Northern, Southern, Central, etc., as a qualifiers:

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Northern Ireland

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

(Not Subd Geog)

Coding headings: H 364 (2-4)

NTS

SEE Narrower terms

Number of choral parts in chorus music headings: H 1917.5 (34)

Number of solo vocal parts in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (29-31)

Number of the same instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (11, 14-17)

Numerals

Abbreviations: Appendix A (6-7)

Numeric tags: H 200

Numismatic collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
Nursery rhymes: H 1800 (2)
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)
Nursing homes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

- O -

Observatories
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Occupational groups
 Folklore: H 1627 (3)
 –**Education**: H 2217 (2)
 –**Professional ethics**: H 1949
 –**Training of**: H 2217 (1-2)
Occupations
 Formulating headings: H 1592
Ocean currents
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
Oceans
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Office buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Official residences
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Old age homes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Old Catalog headings
 Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (5)
On postage stamps as a subdivision: H 1945
Online subject authority records
 SEE Subject authority records
Opera houses
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Operas
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1160
 –**History and criticism** not used: H 1160 (4)
Order of instruments in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27)
Order of subdivisions in a subject heading string: H 1075 (4-6)
Order of subject headings: H 80

Orders, Monastic
 SEE Monastic orders
Orders, Religious
 SEE Religious orders
Ordinal numerals
 SEE Numerals
Organizations
 SEE Corporate bodies
Organs as a subdivision
 Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)
Organs of the body
 Pattern heading: H 1164
"Orphan" subject headings: H 370 (3-4)
Orphanages
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)
"OSER" file
 SEE "MAGS" file

- P -

Pageants
 Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)
Palaces
 SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Palestine: H 980 (2)
Palestinian National Authority: H 980 (3)
Parades
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings: H 357
 Music: H 250 (3, 5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5
 Musical instruments: H 1161 (2), H 1918 (2, 6-8)
Park districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Parks: H 1925
 SEE ALSO City parks
 National parks
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (4), H 1925 (6)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)
 Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Parks (Administrative agencies)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Partial biography: H 1330 (5)

Partial title added entries: **H 150**
 Named collections of objects: H 1427 (3)

Participation, [. . .] as a subdivision: H 1200 (1-2)

Parts of the body
 Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1146
 SEE ALSO specific pattern headings
 As examples in "General see also" references: **H 371** (9), H 1146 (1, 2)
 Establishing new subdivisions under: H 1146 (2-3)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147-H 1200
 Music headings governed by: H 250 (7-11)

Pavilions
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Peoples, Ancient
 SEE Ancient peoples

People's Republic of China
 SEE China

Performing arts
 SEE ALSO Drama
 Music
 –**Reviews**: H 2021 (2)

Period subdivisions
 SEE Chronological subdivisions

Periodicals as a subdivision: **H 1927**, H 2060
 Form subdivisions not further subdivided by –**Periodicals**: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Bibliographies of: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Catalogs of: H 1361 (1)

Periodicals, Electronic: H 1580.5

Persian subject headings in RLIN: H 181

Personal correspondence
 SEE Correspondence of individual persons

Personal names
 SEE Names of persons

Personal narratives as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), H 1538 (2), **H 1928**

Persons, Classes of
 SEE Classes of persons

Persons, Names of
 SEE Names of persons

Pets
 Biography: H 1720

Philosophers

–**Philosophy** not used under names of individual philosophers: H 1929

Philosophy headings

Usage of –**History** under: H 1647 (5)

Photograph collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Photographs as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)

Photographs from space as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Photography: H 1935 (2)

Photography, Aerial: H 1210.5

Photography, Artistic: H 1255

Photography, Portrait: H 1255 (2)

Photography, Space: H 1210.5 (2)

Phrase headings

SEE ALSO [...] **and** [...] headings

Free-floating terms and phrases

[...] **in** [...] headings

Broader terms: H 370 (6-9)

Phrase headings vs. subdivisions

[...] **and** [...] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Piano

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Pictorial works as a subdivision: H 1935

Picture dictionaries: H 1540 (4)

Pipelines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Place names

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dictionaries (Gazetteers)

SEE Gazetteers

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Local history and genealogical source material: H 1845

Newspapers: H 1920 (1)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Plains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Planetariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Planets

SEE Celestial bodies

Plans (Programs)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plants

SEE ALSO Domestic plants

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Establishing biological names: H 1332 (1-6)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

Pattern heading: H 1180

Subject heading proposals: H 1332

Playgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Plays

SEE Drama

Plays, Children's

SEE Juvenile drama

Plazas: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Plural vs. singular form of subject headings: H 285

Animals: H 1332 (2)

[...] as [...] headings: H 360

Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)

Parts of the body: H 285 (1)

Plants: H 1332 (2)

Products: H 285 (1)

Poetry: H 1800

Poetry, Children's

SEE Juvenile poetry

Poetry, Folk

SEE Folk poetry

Poetry as a subdivision: H 1800 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Poets

SEE Literary authors, Groups

Literary authors, Individual

Police stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Political activity as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

Political aspects as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)
Political divisions of countries
 SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries
Political history
 SEE **Politics and government** as a subdivision
Political incidents
 Formulating headings: H 1592
Political jurisdictions
 SEE Geographic name headings
Political participation: H 1942 (3)
Political science: H 1942 (1)
Politicians
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Politics, Practical: H 1942 (3)
Politics and government as a subdivision: H 1942
Polyglot dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)
Pools, Public
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Poorhouses
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Popular music: H 1916.5
Popular works as a subdivision: H 1943.5
Port authorities
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Portals as building details
 SEE Building details
Portrait photography: H 1255 (2)
Portraits as a subdivision: H 1935 (2)
Ports
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Possessions
 SEE **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision
Post offices
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Postage stamps on specific topics: H 1945
Poster collections: H 1945.5 (3)
Poster collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
Posters: H 1945.5
 Qualifying by nationalities: H 1945.5 (2)
Posters, Travel
 SEE Travel posters
Posters as a subdivision: H 1945.5

Posthouses
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Power plants
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Preaching: H 2032 (4)

Prehistoric periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Prepositional phrase headings
 SEE Phrase headings

Presidential mansions
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Presidents
 SEE Rulers and statesmen

Princes: H 1574 (2)

Princesses: H 1574 (2)

Prisons
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Private book collections
 SEE **Library** as a subdivision

Private collections: H 1427 (2-4)

Private collections as a subdivision: H 1360 (3), H 1427
 Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

Prizes: H 1265

Products
 Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Professional ethics: H 1949

Professional ethics as a subdivision: H 1949

Programs (Plans)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Programs, Computer
 SEE Computer programs, Individual

Projects
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Proper names
 SEE Name headings

Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers
 Adding 781 fields: H 835 (2-3)
 Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 475 (1-2)

Proposals for subject headings
 SEE Subject heading proposals
 "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Proverbs
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Provinces as a subdivision: H 713
Provisional name headings: H 436
Provisional subject headings: H 1334 (2)
Psychological testing as a subdivision: H 2186
Public buildings
 Broader terms: H 1334 (7)
Public celebrations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Public comfort stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955
Public pools
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965
Publishers' imprints
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Pueblos
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Puerto Rico
 Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)
Punctuation: Appendix D
 Headings using free-floating terms and phrases: H 362 (3)
 Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26)
 [. . .] **Region** headings: H 362 (3), H 760 (1)
Purges
 Formulating headings: H 1592

- Q -

Qualifiers, Geographic
 SEE Geographic qualifiers
Qualifiers, Parenthetical, in subject headings
 SEE Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings
Qualifiers, Subject heading
 SEE Subject heading qualifiers
Quarters of cities: H 720
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**
Queens: H 1574 (2)

Questions and answers: H 1910
Quotations as a subdivision: H 1969
Quotations, maxims, etc. as a subdivision: H 1969

- R -

Races (Contests)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Racetracks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Radio programs
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Raids
 Formulating headings: H 1592

Railroads: H 1970
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8), H 1970 (1)

Railway stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Ranches
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Readers: H 1975
Readers as a subdivision: H 1975

Reading films, Juvenile
 SEE Juvenile films

Reading interests: H 1333

Recipes: H 1475

Recordings, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
 Discography as a subdivision
 Film catalogs as a subdivision
 Video tape catalogs as a subdivision

Recordings, Juvenile sound
 SEE Juvenile sound recordings

Recreation areas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Recreation districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Recruiting, enlistment, etc. as a subdivision
 Subdividing by wars: H 1159 (2)

Reference books: H 1980
 Bibliographies: H 1980 (2-3)

References

- SEE Broader terms
- Narrower terms
- Related terms
- "Used for" references

Referrals to descriptive catalogers

- Requests to have named entities established: H 405 (3)

Refugee camps

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Regimental histories as a subdivision: H 1995

Regions, Geographic

- City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)
- Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
- Constructing headings with the free-floating term [. . .] **Region**: H 362 (2-3), **H 760**
- Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)
- Regions based on international organizations: H 760 (4)
- Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

Regions as a subdivision: H 713

Regions of the body

- Pattern heading: H 1164

Registers of births, etc.: H 1631 (2), H 1845 (2)

Reigns

- Formulating headings: H 1592

Related terms: H 370 (10-12)

- Changing references: H 195 (1-2)
- Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)
- Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Relationships between two topics

- [. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Religion as a subdivision: H 1997

- Religion–History** not used: H 1997 (1, 2)

Religions: H 1998, H 2015

- Apologetic works**: H 1472 (1)
- As subdivisions under –**Religions aspects**: H 1998 (2)
- As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)
- Civilization: H 1370 (2)
- Controversial literature**: H 1472 (1)
- Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Religions (*Continued*)

Founders of

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious aspects as a subdivision: H 1998

Subdivided by religions and denominations: H 1998 (2-3)

Religious denominations

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Religious education textbooks: H 2187 (2)

Religious groups

Music: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Religious life: H 2015.5

SEE ALSO **Christian life**

Religious life and customs as a subdivision: H 2016

Religious life as a subdivision: H 2015.5

Religious orders

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

–**Monastic and religious life:** H 2015.5 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1186

Religious qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

Religious sects: H 2015 (2)

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

–**Apologetic works:** H 1472

As subdivisions under –**Religious aspects:** H 1998 (2-3)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious works

SEE ALSO Sacred works

–**History and criticism:** H 2190 (3)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3, 11-18)

Republic of China

SEE Taiwan

Republics as a subdivision: H 713

Republics of the former Soviet Union: H 1023 (2-4)

Requests to descriptive catalogers to establish named entities: H 405 (3)

Research, Legal

SEE **Legal research** as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision: H 2020

Legal materials: H 1710

Research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Research Libraries Information Network Chinese Japanese Korean subject headings

SEE RLIN CJK subject headings

Research stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Reservations, Indian

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Reserves

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Reserves (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Reservoirs

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Resorts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Restaurants

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Retail stores

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Retail trade

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153

Return migration: H 1581 (4)

Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021

Revolutions

SEE ALSO Cultural revolutions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Rhymes, Nursery

SEE Nursery rhymes

Riddles

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Riots

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Rituals–Texts as a subdivision: H 2190 (3)

River basins

SEE Watersheds

River deltas

SEE Deltas

River regions: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

River valleys

SEE ALSO Rivers

Valleys

Formulating headings: **H 800** (7), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on river valleys: H 760 (1)

Rivers

SEE ALSO Estuaries

Forks of rivers

River regions

River valleys

Watersheds

Wild and scenic rivers

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating region headings based on names of rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8),
H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic subdivision: H 800 (9)

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (1-6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 800 (1-3)

References: H 800 (3-5)

RLIN Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181

RLIN CJK subject headings: H 182

Roads

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
- Subject heading proposals: H 2098
 - Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)
 - Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Rockshelters

- Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Roman gods

- SEE* Greek and Roman gods

Roman numerals

- SEE* Numerals

Romance languages

- SEE ALSO* Foreign languages, Subject headings for
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Romances: H 1795

Romances, Arthurian

- SEE* Arthurian romances

Romances as a subdivision: H 1795 (2-3)

Romanization

- Greek and Hebrew letters in subject headings: Appendix C (4)
- RLIN Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
- RLIN CJK subject headings: H 182
- Topical headings established in foreign languages: H 315
- UF references for geographic headings: H 690 (8)

Rooms as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Royal houses: H 1574

- Biography** not used: H 1574 (2)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
- Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-4)

RTS

- SEE* Related terms

Rulers and statesmen

- SEE ALSO* **Kings and rulers** as a subdivision
- Biography: H 1330 (5)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Russia: H 1023 (1)

Russian as adjectival qualifier

- vs. **Soviet**: H 1023 (4)

- S -

Sacred texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Sacred works

SEE ALSO Religious works

Translations—Sacred works
specific sacred books

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (2)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (6, 11-18)

Pattern heading: H 1188

–**Textbooks:** H 2187 (1)

–**Translations:** H 1300 (1)

–**Translations into [. . .]:** H 1300 (2)

Versions or translations: **H 1300**, H 1435 (3)

Safety regulations as a subdivision: H 1705

Saint

Abbreviations: Appendix A (7-8)

Family names: H 1631 (3)

Sanatoriums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Sanitary landfills

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Sanitation districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Satellites (Moons)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Satellites, Artificial

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Scandals

Formulating headings: H 1592

Scenic rivers

SEE Wild and scenic rivers

School districts

Established as name headings: H 450 (8)

Schools (Educational institutions)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Schools (Groups of people)

Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Schools of artists

Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Scientific and technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

Scientific apparatus collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Scientific expeditions:

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Scope notes: H 400

Adding to an existing heading: H 400 (4)

Changing an existing note: H 400 (4)

Proposing with a new heading: H 200 (8, 17), H 400 (4)

Scope notes that allow for free-floating subdivision of headings: H 1090 (1)

Scores

Not forwarded to the Subject Headings Editorial team when proposing new headings:
H 250 (11)

Scotland

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Sculpture: H 1250 (2)

Seas

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021 (2)

Sects, Christian

SEE Christian denominations

Sects, Religious

SEE Religious sects

"See also" references

SEE Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"See also" references, General

SEE General see also references

"See" references

SEE "Used for" references

"See" references, General

SEE General see references

Selections

Not used in name-title subject headings for musical works: H 1438 (2)

Serbia: H 1055

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Serials, Electronic: H 1580.5
 Sermons: H 2032
 Service stations
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6
 Ships
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Shipyards
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Shopping centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Short films: H 1913 (2)
 Shows (Exhibitions)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Shrines
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Sieges: H 1560 (2), H 1592 (8)
 Formulating headings: H 1592
Simulation methods as a subdivision: H 2040 (1), H 2110 (4)
 Singular vs. plural form of subject headings: H 285
 Animals: H 1332 (2)
 [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
 Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)
 Parts of the body: H 285 (1)
 Plants: H 1332 (2)
 Products: H 285 (1)
 Sites, Archaeological
 SEE Archaeological sites
 653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160
Slide collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
 Slides: H 2230
 Slovenia: H 1055
Social conditions as a subdivision: H 2055
 Social history
 Definition and comparison with **Civilization:** H 1370 (1)

Social life and customs as a subdivision: H 2057
Folklore materials: H 1627 (1)
–**History** not used: H 2057 (1)
Period subdivisions: H 2057 (1)

Societies and clubs as a subdivision: H 2060

Societies, etc. as a subdivision: H 2060
Family names: H 1631 (8)

Socioeconomic status as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)

Sociological aspects as a subdivision: H 2055 (1)

Software: H 2070
Individual computer programs established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Song texts
Language: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)
Without the music: H 2190 (2)

Songs, Folk
SEE Folk songs

Songs and music as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Sound recording labels
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sound recordings
Jazz and popular music
Chronological subdivisions: H 1916.5 (3)
Juvenile: H 1690 (2-3)
Non-music: H 2230
Not forwarded to the Subject Headings Editorial team when proposing new headings:
H 250 (11)

Sound recordings, Juvenile
SEE Juvenile sound recordings

Sound recordings, Non-music: H 2230

Source materials: H 2080
SEE ALSO specific types of source materials
Bibliographies: H 2080 (4-5)
Catalogs: H 2080 (5)

Sources as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), **H 2080**
Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Southern, Central, Northern, etc., as qualifiers:
Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Sovereignties, Territorial
SEE Territorial sovereignties

Soviet as adjectival qualifier
vs. **Russian**: H 1023 (4)
Soviet republics, Former: H 1023 (2-4)
Soviet Union: H 1023 (1)
Space exploration: H 1564 (2)
Space photography: H 1210.5 (2)
Space vehicles
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Spanish America
SEE Latin America
Spas
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Special characters: Appendix C
Special days: H 1592
Special decades: H 1592
Special months: H 1592
Special weeks: H 1592
Special years: H 1592
Specifications: H 2083
Specifications as a subdivision: H 2083
Specificity of subject headings: H 180 (2)
Splits of jurisdictions into two or more entities: H 710
Sports arenas
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Sports events
SEE ALSO specific types of sports events
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Sports facilities
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Spouses of famous people
Biography: H 1330 (4)
Squadrons
Use of –**Regimental histories**: H 1995
Stadiums
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Stagecoach stations
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Stamp collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
States as a subdivision: H 713
Statesmen
SEE Rulers and statesmen
Statistical methods as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)

Statistical services as a subdivision: H 2095 (3)
Statistics: H 2095
 Nature of work/nature of contents codes: H 2095 (3)
Statistics, Medical
 SEE Medical statistics
Statistics, Vital
 SEE Vital statistics
Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095 (1-2)
Statues
 SEE Monuments
Steppes
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
Stock exchanges
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Stores, Retail
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Stories as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1790 (2)
Storms
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Straight word order
 Topical subject headings: H 306
Streets
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 Subject heading proposals: H 2098
 Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)
 Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)
Strikes: H 2100
Structures
 SEE Buildings and structures
Students
 Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)
Students–Yearbooks as a subdivision: H 2400
Studies (Research projects)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Studies and exercises as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)
Study and teaching as a subdivision: H 2110
 Area studies: H 2110 (2)
 –**Activity programs**: H 2110 (4)
 –**Audio-visual aids**: H 2110 (4)

Study and teaching as a subdivision (*Continued*)

–**Simulation methods:** H 2110 (4)

–**Supervision:** H 2110 (2)

Subdivision, Geographic

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivision, Indirect

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivisions: H 1075

SEE ALSO Chronological subdivisions

Discontinued subdivisions

Form subdivisions

Free-floating subdivisions

Geographic subdivisions

Multiple subdivisions

specific pattern headings

Abbreviated forms discontinued: Appendix A (1)

Broader terms: H 370 (4, 7-8)

Controlled by pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Formulating dates for specific events: H 1078

Further subdividing by place: H 860

"General see also" references: H 371 (2-8)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Order of subdivisions: H 1075 (4-6)

Proposals to establish

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090 (3)

Religions: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Subdivisions having general application: H 205

Subdivisions qualified by nationality, ethnic group, language, etc.: H 320

Subdivisions under pattern headings: H 1146 (2-3)

Subdivisions vs. phrase headings

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Subfield coding

Events established as subdivisions: H 1592 (6)

Geographic subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Names of places used as topical subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Subheadings as "used for" references: H 373 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation in name authority records: H 405 (4)

- Subject authority records: H 40
 - Changing existing records: H 193
 - Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 194, H 250 (11)
 - Changing classification numbers: H 196
 - Changing references: H 195
 - Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5
 - Characteristics of records in the file: H 40 (1)
 - Creating new authority records: H 200
 - Filling hierarchical "gaps": H 370 (5)
 - Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
 - Biological names: H 1332 (5)
 - Geographic subdivision information in 781 fields: H 836
 - Historical background: H 40 (1)
 - Status of headings: H 40 (1-2)
 - Tagging headings: H 200 (4)
- Subject dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)
- Subject heading assignment: H 180
 - SEE ALSO* specific topics
 - Editions: H 175
 - Latest name of jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)
 - Order of headings: H 80
 - Subject authority records: H 40 (2)
 - Subject headings identical to descriptive access points: H 184
- Subject heading construction: H 180 (7-8)
 - Music headings: H 250 (2-11), H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5
 - Musical instruments: H 1918
- Subject heading proposals: H 200
 - SEE ALSO* "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics
 - Abbreviations in subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (2)
 - Acronyms as subject headings: H 373 (2)
 - Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290
 - Authority research: H 202
 - Checklist: H 202 (9)
 - Broader terms and narrower terms: H 200 (6-7), H 370, H 375
 - Cataloger comments accompanying proposals: H 200 (10)
 - Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
 - Changing existing headings
 - Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 193 (1), **H 194**
 - Changing classification numbers: H 196
 - Changing references: H 195
 - Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5
 - Checklist for new subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)

Subject heading proposals (*Continued*)

Citing sources: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**

Subject Cataloging Manual as a source: H 200 (9)

Classification numbers: **H 365**

Changing numbers associated with existing headings: H 196

Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

New subject headings: H 200 (3, 15)

Diacritics and special characters in subject headings: Appendix C

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

LC patterns

Criteria for citing: H 202 (1-2)

Procedure for citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18)

Related terms: H 200 (6-7, 16), H 370 (10-12)

Scope notes: H 400

Subject authority records: H 200

"Used for" references: H 200 (5-6, 15), H 373

When to propose new subject headings H 187

Subject heading qualifiers

SEE ALSO Geographic qualifiers

Language qualifiers for subject headings

Art qualifiers: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)

Ethnic qualifiers: H 306 (2), **H 351**

Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Language qualifiers: H 250 (4-5), H 306 (2)

Music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (3), H 1160 (1), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1917 (1),

H 1917.5, H 1918 (3)

Nationality qualifiers: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Parenthetical qualifiers: H 357

Music: H 250 (5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918 (2, 6-8)

Religious qualifiers: H 306 (2)

Time periods: H 306 (3)

Subject headings, Authority records for

SEE Subject authority records

Subject headings, Cancelling:

SEE Cancelling subject headings

Subject headings, Changing existing

SEE Changing existing subject headings

Subject headings, Specificity of: H 180 (2)

Subject usage information in name authority records: H 432, H 708, H 835
 Geographic subdivision information: H 835
 Name changes in political jurisdictions: H 708
Subscript characters: Appendix C (3)
[. . .] **Suburban Area:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)
Suburbs and environs as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 790 (3)
Superscript characters: Appendix C (3)
Supplements: H 2145
Surveys: H 2149
Synagogues
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Systems of law: H 1718

- T -

Tables as a subdivision: H 2160
Tagging subject headings
 Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)
 Subject authority records: H 200 (4)
Taiwan: H 925 (2)
Tajikistan: H 1023 (2-4)
Tales: H 1627 (5, 7)
 SEE ALSO Fairy tales
 As a folklore heading: H 1627 (1, 4)
 Juvenile films: H 1690 (3)
 Language qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)
Tape recordings, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
Tape recordings, Video
 SEE Video recordings
Teacher training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)
Teachers
 –**In-service training:** H 2217 (2)
 –**Training of:** H 2217
Teaching films, Foreign language: H 2230 (2)
Technical atlases: H 1935 (3)
Telephone calls
 Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)
Telephone directories as a subdivision: H 1558 (4)

Television programs
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Temples in ruins
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Temples in use
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Terminal buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Terminology as a subdivision: H 2184 (2)
 –**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

Terms and phrases as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)
 –**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

Territorial questions as a subdivision: H 1333.5 (2)

Territorial sovereignties
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Territories and possessions as a subdivision: H 2185
SEE ALSO Colonies of individual countries

Terrorist attacks
 Not covered by pattern heading for wars: H 1200 (1)

Testing as a subdivision: H 2186

Textbooks: H 2187
SEE ALSO Juvenile textbooks
 –**Study and teaching** not used: H 2110 (4)

Textbooks, Religious education
SEE Religious education textbooks

Textbooks as a subdivision: H 1690 (1), **H 2187**

Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (3)

Textbooks for foreign speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (2)

Texts as a subdivision: H 2190
 Music: H 1160 (8), H 1917 (1)

"The" in the initial position in subject headings: H 290, H 690 (6)

Theater buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Theater companies
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Theater disaster, [date] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1560 (2)

Theme parks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Themes, motives as a subdivision: H 1627 (2)

Theology as a subdivision
 Usage under **Bible**: H 1295 (2)

Theses: H 1570
Time period qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)
Time periods: H 620
Title added entries, Partial
 SEE Partial title added entries
Titles of publications as subject headings: H 290, H 1435 (2-3)
Tombs
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Topical subdivisions: H 1075 (1)
 Literature about music: H 1160 (4)
 Musical instruments: H 1161
Topical subject headings
 Music: H 1160 (3), H 1916.3 (7-8)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)
Tornadoes
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Tournaments
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Tours as a subdivision: H 1645 (3)
Towers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
Townships in the United States
 Not used as geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)
Trails
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (4)
 Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 1925 (2)
Training of as a subdivision: H 2110 (2), **H 2217**
Translating and interpreting: H 2219 (1)
Translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)
 Sacred works: H 1300 (1)
Translating into [name of language] as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)
Translating services: H 2219 (2)
Translations: H 2220
 Classical and ancient works: H 1412
 Folk literature: H 1627 (5)
 Sacred works: H 1300
Translations as a subdivision: H 2220
Translations into [name of language] as a subdivision: H 2220
 Folk literature: H 1627 (5)
 Not used under headings for music of ethnic and national groups: H 1917 (4)
 Sacred works: H 1300 (2)

Transliteration

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

Transportation: H 2225

Transportation as a subdivision: H 2225 (2)

Travel posters: H 1945.5 (3)

Treaties: H 2227

Established as name headings: H 2227 (1)

Treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Trials: H 2228

Formulating headings: H 2228 (4-5)

Trials, litigation, etc. as a subdivision: H 2228 (2-4)

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Tribes (Legal entities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tribes, Indigenous (U.S.)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

Tripitaka: H 1300

Truck stops

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tsunamis

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tuberculosis

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Turkmenistan: H 1023 (2-4)

Tunnels: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Typhoons

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- U -

U.S.A.

SEE United States

U.S.S.R.: H 1023 (1)

U.S. Newspaper Program: H 1920 (1)

U.S. states: H 713

U.S. Virgin Islands

SEE Virgin Islands of the United States

UF references

SEE "Used for" references

Ukraine: H 1023 (2-4)
Unaccompanied as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (31, 34-35, 37-38)
Uncontrolled subject terms in the 653 field: H 160
Undertakers
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
Uniform titles as subject headings
 Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)
 Deleting articles in the initial position: H 290
 Established as name headings: H 1435 (3)
 –**History** not used: H 1647 (2)
 Tagging headings
 Subject authority records: H 200 (4)
Union catalogs: H 1361 (2)
Union lists as a subdivision: H 1361 (2)
Union territories as a subdivision: H 713
United Kingdom
 SEE Great Britain
United States
 Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (5)
 Not used under [. . .] **Americans**: H 1919.5 (3)
 Not used under certain popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2)
 Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)
 Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9-11)
United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200
United States. Air Force
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Armed Forces
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Army
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Congress
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155
United States. Marine Corps
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Navy
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States Board on Geographic Names decisions
 SEE BGN decisions
United States states: H 713

Universities and colleges

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Pattern heading for individual educational institutions: H 1151

Pattern heading for types of educational institutions: H 1151.5

Uprisings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Urban transportation: H 2225

USA

SEE United States

"Use" references

SEE "Used for references"

"Used for" references: H 373

Changing references: H 195 (1)

Contrasted with "general see" references: H 374 (1)

Entering in subject authority records: H 200 (5-6, 15)

Foreign language terms: H 373 (3)

Geographic names: H 690 (7-8)

Headings qualified by nationality, ethnic group, or language: H 320 (2), H 373 (4)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Music genre/form headings: H 250 (3-4, 6), H 1917.5 (10)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (3)

Subheadings: H 373 (3)

Variant music subdivisions: H 1160 (1), H 1161 (1)

USNP

SEE U.S. Newspaper program

USSR: H 1023 (1)

Utility districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Uzbekistan: H 1023 (2-4)

- V -

Valleys

SEE ALSO River valleys

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Vatican City: H 1045

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1045

Vedas: H 1300

Vehicles, Land

SEE Land vehicles

Vernacular Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
Vernacular CJK subject headings: H 182
Versions as a subdivision: H 1300 (1-2)
Video recordings: H 2230
Video catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)
Villas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
Violin
 Free-floating subdivisions used under: H 1161
Virgin Islands of the United States
 Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)
 Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)
Visual art
 SEE Art
Visual disabilities, People with
 Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)
Visual materials: H 2230
Vital statistics: H 2095 (2)
Vocal music headings
 Accompaniment: H 1917.5 (36)
 Chorus: H 1917.5 (32-35, 37-38)
 Construction: H 1917.5 (28-37)
 Governed by pattern headings: H 250 (8)
 –**History and criticism**: H 2190 (2)
 Solo voices: H 1917.5 (29-31)
 –**Texts**: H 2190 (2)
Vocational guidance as a subdivision: H 2232
Voivodeships as a subdivision: H 713
Volcanic eruptions
 Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

- W -

Wales
 Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)
 Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)
Walls: H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
War crime trials: H 2228 (4)

Wars

- Biography: H 1330 (4)
- ~~Casualties–Statistics~~: H 2095 (2)
- Drama: H 1780 (4)
- Fiction: H 1790 (5)
- Formulating headings: H 1592
- Pattern heading: H 1200
- ~~Personal narratives~~: H 1928 (1)
- Poetry: H 1800 (4)
- ~~Public opinion~~: H 1955 (5)
- ~~Territorial questions~~: H 1333.5 (2)
- ~~Treaties~~: H 2227 (1)

Washington (D.C.)

- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1050
- Metropolitan Area: H 362 (2), H 790 (1,3), H 1050
- Region: H 790 (4)

Water districts

- Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Watersheds

- Formulating headings: H 800 (7-8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Region**

- Headings not constructed for regions based on watersheds: H 760 (1)

Waterways

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Weeks, Special: H 1592

Wells

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

West Bank: H 980

West Germany

- SEE* Germany

Wild and scenic rivers

- Subject heading proposals: H 800 (6), **H 1925**

Wilderness areas: H 1925 (2)

Wildlife refuges

- SEE* Parks

Windows as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

with in music form/genre headings: H 250 (8), H 1916.3 (3), H 1917.5 (21, 26-27)

Wives of famous men

- Biography: H 1330 (4)

Women

- SEE ALSO* Wives of famous men

- Biography: H 1330 (3)

Works of art, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

World politics: H 1942 (1)

World War, 1939-1945

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200

–**Public opinion:** H 1955 (5)

World Wide Web

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

- X -

"x" references

SEE "Used for" references

"xx" references

SEE Broader terms

Related terms

- Y -

Yearbooks as a subdivision

Discontinued as a general form subdivision: H 2400

Usage under –**Students:** H 2400

Years: H 620

Years, Special: H 1592

Yugoslavia: H 1055

- Z -

Zaibatsu

SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Zoological gardens

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)